



ALAWAA

Gem

HS17ONE

2026

PRIM.

th

First Term



Table of contents

Module 1

Introduction

Let's remember

Check and Go! 9

Reading Skills 11

A) Wh-words 11

B) How to Answer Reading Comprehension

Questions 13

Writing Skills 14

A) Parts of Speech 14

B) Sentence Formation 16

C) Punctuation Marks 17

D) Tips for Writing a Paragraph 19

Unit 1

The Five Senses

Lesson 1 22

Practice on Lesson 1 25

Lesson 2 27

Practice on Lesson 2 32

Lesson 3 34

Practice on Lesson 3 38

Lessons 4 and 5 40

Practice on Lessons 4 and 5 42

Unit Review 44

Check Your Vocabulary 45

Student's Book Corner 46

Writing Time 47

Test Yourself 1 48

Test Yourself 2 50

Al-Azhar Corner 52

Module 2

Unit 2

My Community

Lesson 1 54

Practice on Lesson 1 57

Lesson 2 59

Practice on Lesson 2 63

Lesson 3 65

Practice on Lesson 3 70

Lessons 4 and 5 72

Practice on Lessons 4 and 5 75

Unit Review 77

Check Your Vocabulary 78

Writing Time 79

Student's Book Corner 80

Test Yourself 1 81

Test Yourself 2 83

Al-Azhar Corner 85

Al Adwaa Revision on October 86

Al Adwaa Tests on October 89

Unit 3

Animals in Our World

Lesson 1 94

Practice on Lesson 1 98

Lesson 2 100

Practice on Lesson 2 105

Lesson 3 107

Practice on Lesson 3 111

Lessons 4 and 5 113

Practice on Lessons 4 and 5 116

Unit Review 118

Check Your Vocabulary 119

Writing Time 120

Student's Book Corner 121

Test Yourself 1 122

Test Yourself 2 124

Al-Azhar Corner 126



Unit 4 Egypt My Homeland

Lesson 1	128
Practice on Lesson 1	131
Lesson 2	133
Practice on Lesson 2	138
Lesson 3	140
Practice on Lesson 3	142
Lessons 4 and 5	144
Practice on Lessons 4 and 5	148
Unit Review	150
Check Your Vocabulary	151
Writing Time	152
Student's Book Corner	153
Test Yourself 1	154
Test Yourself 2	156
Al-Azhar Corner	158
Al Adwaa Revision on November	159
Al Adwaa Tests on November	162

Module 3

Unit 5 A Day at Work

Lesson 1	167
Practice on Lesson 1	171
Lesson 2	173
Practice on Lesson 2	178
Lesson 3	180
Practice on Lesson 3	185
Lessons 4 and 5	187
Practice on Lessons 4 and 5	190
Unit Review	192
Check Your Vocabulary	193
Writing Time	194
Student's Book Corner	195
Test Yourself 1	196
Test Yourself 2	198
Al-Azhar Corner	200

Unit 6 The Hundred Dresses (Story)

Vocabulary	203
Story Elements	204
Story	205
Practice on Story	210

Final Revision and Exams

Revision on Units 1 and 2	213
Revision on Units 3 and 4	219
Revision on Units 5 and 6	225
Conjugation of Verbs	229
Final Tests	231
Al-Azhar Tests	261
Tapescripts	271
Writing Answers	274
Dictation Copybook	277



Let's remember

هذا الجزء تأسس يهدف إلى تنمية مهارتي القراءة والكتابة لدى الطالب.



- Check and Go!
- Reading Skills
- Writing Skills



Check and Go!

30

هذا الجزء مخصص لقياس مستوى الطالب قبل البدء في العام الدراسي الجديد وتحديد أهم النقاط التي يحتاج إلى تقويتها.



Listening

1 Listen and complete the dialog:

4

health – fruits – strong – play

Mazen : I want to be (1)..... and healthy.

Moaz : Me too! I eat (2)..... and drink water every day.

Mazen : That's good. I also (3)..... football to stay fit.

Moaz : Playing sports is great for our (4)..... .



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer:

6

1 There's a big TV in the (kitchen – bathroom – living room – balcony).

2 My favorite subject is (meat – juice – football – English).

3 The elephant isn't small. It's (big – short – healthy – thin).

4 I (sleep – sleeps – sleeping – is sleeping) in my bedroom.

5 She is (walk – walks – walking – walked) to school.

6 What time (are – am – is – be) it?

3 Read and complete:

4

cooking – playing – setting – feeding

1 Mom is chicken today.

2 The children are in the garden.

3 Hassan is the cat.

4 Heba is the table for dinner.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

5

I'm Adam. I wake up early. I have a yummy breakfast, then I go to school. I learn new things, and I play with my friends. In the afternoon, I do my homework, and sometimes I play outside. My favorite sport is tennis.

9

A Choose the correct answer:

- 1 Adam wakes up (early – at night – late – in the afternoon).
- 2 He has a/an (healthy – yummy – sweet – unhealthy) breakfast.
- 3 He learns (new – bad – old – funny) things at school.

B Answer the following questions:

- 4 When does Adam do his homework?

- 5 What's Adam's favorite sport?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

2

- 1 Ali (be) a good boy.
- 2 We (has) a car.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

4

- 1 giraffes – like – I.
- 2 to – went – We – zoo – the.
- 3 chicken – like – you – Do?
- 4 computer – love – I – games – playing.

7 Write a paragraph using the following guiding elements:

5

“A visit to the zoo”

elephant – panda – lion

1. Reading Skills



Wh- words

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة كلمات الاستفهام والإجابة عن المطلوب بطريقة صحيحة.

What ...? (ما/ماذا (للسؤال عن نوع ماهية الأشياء)

A: **What** is this?

B: This is **a pen**.

Where ...? (أين (للسؤال عن المكان)

A: **Where** do you live?

B: I live in **Cairo**.

When ...? (متى (للسؤال عن الوقت)

A: **When** do you go to bed?

B: I go to bed at **9:00 o'clock**.

Who ...? (من (للسؤال عن العاقل)

A: **Who** is he?

B: He is **my grandpa**.

Whose ...? (لمن (للسؤال عن الملكية)

A: **Whose** watch is this?

B: This is **my** watch./This watch is **mine**.

Which ...? (أي (للسؤال عن الاختيار)

A: **Which** toy do you want?

B: I want **the pink** doll.

How ...? (كيف (للسؤال عن الحال ووسيلة المواصلات)

A: **How** do you go to work?

B: I go to work **by taxi**.

How many ...? (كم العدد (للسؤال عن العدد)

A: **How many** desks are there?

B: There are **ten** desks.

How old ...? (كم العمر (للسؤال عن العمر)

A: **How old** are you?

B: I'm **seven years old**.

How long ...?

(كم الطول (للسؤال عن الأطوال الأفقية) (للسؤال عن المدة الزمنية)

A: **How long** is your classroom?

B: It is **6 meters** long.

A: **How long** do you study English every day?

B: I study English for **an hour** every day.

How much ...? (كم الثمن (للسؤال عن الثمن / الكمية)

A: **How much** is the birthday cake?

B: It's **fifty pounds**.

Why ...? (لماذا (للسؤال عن السبب)

A: **Why** do you go to school?

B: I go to school **to learn**.

✓ Checkpoint 1. Choose the correct answer:

- 1 A: (What – How) is this? B: This is my watch.
- 2 A: Who is this? B: This is (my pen – my friend).
- 3 A: (Who – Which) dress do you want? B: The red dress.
- 4 A: (When – Where) will you come home? B: At night.
- 5 A: How many students are there? B: (At school – Ten).
- 6 A: How old is he? B: He's (a teacher – twenty).
- 7 A: How do you go to school? B: I go to school (at 8 am – on foot).
- 8 A: (What – Why) are you happy? B: Because I've got a car.
- 9 A: How (many – old) is your brother? B: He is eight years old.
- 10 A: (What's – When's) your father's name? B: Omar.

2. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 A: (What) is she? B: She is my sister.
- 2 A: (When) do you live? B: I live in Giza.
- 3 A: (Where) is the exam? B: It's next week.
- 4 (Who) many oranges are there in the box?
- 5 A: How (old) is the window? B: It's 90 cm.
- 6 A: (What) are you, Naglaa? B: I'm fine, thank you.
- 7 A: (Who) is that? B: It's my phone.
- 8 A: (What) is she? B: She is in the kitchen.
- 9 A: (Where) bought the cake? B: Mom.
- 10 A: (Who) old are you? B: I'm Ten.
- 11 A: How (much) books did she read? B: Ten books.



How to Answer Reading Comprehension Questions

كيفية الإجابة عن أسئلة قطعة الفهم

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من إجابة أسئلة قطعة الفهم.

للإجابة عن قطعة القراءة المكونة من (70 - 80) كلمة في الورقة الامتحانية، اتبع الإرشادات الآتية:

My name is Amira. Look at my healthy lunchbox. I help my mom prepare it every morning. I wash the vegetables and fruits. Mom cuts the carrots and cucumbers, and I make the sandwich. I don't like to drink cola. Mom makes some fresh orange juice, and on some days. I take a bottle of milk. I like healthy food because it makes me feel strong.

A) Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

Identify the general idea of the text.

لتحدد الفكرة العامة من النص، عليك قراءة الفقرة كلها مرتين ثم قراءة الاختيارات جيداً واختيار الإجابة التي تتمحور حولها القطعة.

The general idea of the text is about

- a) video games b) being healthy c) schools d) Mom

Demonstrate understanding of specific details in the text.

عليك أن تركز على تفاصيل القطعة وربط الأحداث ببعضها وكذلك الترابط والعلاقات بين الأشخاص والأشياء في القطعة.

Amira doesn't like to drink

- a) water b) milk c) cola d) orange juice

Determine the meaning of words and phrases in the text.

لتحديد واستنتاج معاني الكلمات وما تشير إليه، عليك قراءة الجملة التي وردت فيها الكلمة لتستنتج معنى الكلمة بناء على المعنى العام للجملة.

The underlined word "healthy" means

- a) bad b) harmful c) good d) weak

B) Answer the following questions:

Describe the relationship between two people, events, ideas, or pieces of information in a text.

عليك الانتباه إلى الروابط والعلاقة بين الأشياء والأشخاص ببعضها، وعليك كذلك التركيز على ترتيب المعلومات وعلاقتها ببعضها.

What drinks does Amira take to school?

She takes fresh orange juice, and on some days, she takes a bottle of milk.

Make logical inferences from the text.

عليك التركيز على عناصر وأجزاء المعلومات لاستخرج من النص المعلومات المطلوبة.

Why does Amira like healthy food?

Amira likes healthy food because it makes her feel strong.

Summarize the key supporting details and ideas in the text.

لتمكن من تلخيص الفقرة، عليك قراءة القطعة جيداً واستخرج النقاط الهامة والرئيسية وضعها في جمل مفيدة.

Summarize the text in two sentences.

Amira eats healthy food. She helps her mom prepare her lunchbox.

2. Writing Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة جمل وفقرات بشكل صحيح.



Parts of Speech أنواع الكلمات

Nouns

الأسماء

Pronouns

الضمائر

Verbs

الأفعال

Adjectives

الصفات

Prepositions

حروف الجر

Nouns

* هي اسم شخص، حيوان، مكان، أو شيء.

e.g. Ola, cat, house, bus, ...

* قد يأتي الاسم فاعلاً (بداية الجملة) أو مفعولاً (بعد الفعل).

e.g. Ola is six years old.

The cat is sitting on the table.

✓ Checkpoint Underline the nouns:

1 Mona is clever.

2 Nader likes dogs.

3 I have a friend.

Pronouns

* تحل محل الأسماء.

e.g. I, We, It,

We are very happy.

e.g. I go to school by bus.

It is a bird.

✓ Checkpoint Circle the pronouns:

1 (Ali – He) is clever.

2 (They – Trees) are very tall.

3 What are (Ali – you) reading?

Verbs

* يعبر الفعل عن حدث.

e.g. run, study, swim, ...

* يأتي الفعل غالباً بعد الفاعل.

e.g. We run in the park.

Ola studies English at school.

✓ Checkpoint Circle the verbs:

Habiba likes her school. She meets her

friends there. She plays with them. They

study their lessons and go home happily.

Adjectives

* تصف الأسماء والضمائر.

e.g. tall, happy, sad, ...

* قد تأتي الصفة قبل الاسم أو بعد الفعل (be).

e.g. We can see a tall tree.

The girl is happy.

✓ Checkpoint Circle the adjectives:

1 read – Adel – big – me

2 you – nice – school – run

3 clever – chair – book – write

Prepositions

* للدلالة على الوقت أو المكان.

e.g. in, next to, on, ...

* تأتي حروف الجر قبل اسم أو ضمير آخر.

e.g. She wakes up **in** the morning.

The house is **next to** the park.

✓ Checkpoint Reorder to make sentences:

① under – **The cat** – is – the table.

② at – night – **We** – sleep.

③ the – is – **My** – on – desk – book.



Notes

Prepositions of Time

لاحظ استخدامات حروف الجر الآتية:

at with times
مع الأوقات

3 o'clock/ 3:30/ night

in with months, seasons, times of the day, and years
مع الشهور، الفصول، فترات اليوم والسنوات

summer/ May/ the morning/ 2018

on with days and dates
مع الأيام والتواريخ

Friday/ 5th May/ July 10th/ the weekend

✓ Checkpoint Read and choose:

① We don't go to school (**by** – **on** – **to**) Fridays.

② I study science (**at** – **on** – **in**) six o'clock.

③ I go to Aswan (**in** – **on** – **at**) March.

④ My birthday is (**on** – **in** – **at**) June 7th.

⑤ See you (**in** – **on** – **at**) the weekend.

⑥ I brush my teeth (**in** – **on** – **at**) the morning.

⑦ The match is (**in** – **on** – **at**) 4 o'clock.

⑧ He usually goes on holiday (**in** – **on** – **at**) July.



في اللغة الإنجليزية، يتم ترتيب الكلمات حسب نوع الجملة:

Affirmative sentence:

الجملة المثبتة:

subject الفاعل	verb فعل	complement تكملة الجملة
e.g. He	walks	to school every day.
e.g. My parents	travel	to Alexandria in summer.

الجملة التي تحتوي على الأفعال المساعدة (Auxiliary verbs)

في الجملة التي تحتوي على الأفعال المساعدة مثل have / do / be / can، يتم وضع الفعل المساعد قبل الفعل:

subject الفاعل	auxiliary verb فعل مساعد	verb فعل	complement تكملة الجملة
e.g. He	can/ should/ must	do	his homework.
e.g. We	are	having	our breakfast now.
e.g. Ali	doesn't	have	a bike.

الجملة الأمرية (Imperative sentence)

في الجملة التي تحتوي على الأمر، يتم وضع الفعل في بداية الجملة دون وجود فاعل يظهر بشكل صريح:

verb فعل	complement تكملة الجملة
e.g. Shut	the window.
e.g. Study	for your tests.

Yes/No question:

السؤال بـ (هل):

يتم تغيير ترتيب الكلمات، حيث يتم وضع الفعل المساعد قبل الفاعل:

Auxiliary verb فعل مساعد	subject الفاعل	verb فعل	complement ? تكملة السؤال
e.g. Does	he	have	a house?
e.g. Are	you	swimming	in the pool?

Wh-question:

السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

يتم وضع كلمة الاستفهام أول الترتيب ثم الفعل المساعد يليه الفاعل:

Wh- word كلمة الاستفهام	auxiliary verb فعل مساعد	subject الفاعل	verb فعل	complement ? تكملة السؤال
e.g. When	do	you	watch	TV?
e.g. What	are	they	doing	in their room?

✓ Checkpoint Reorder to make sentences:

- ① ready – Lunch – is.
- ② are – singing – Birds.
- ③ music – Hani – listening to – is.



Punctuation Marks علامات الترقيم

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من معرفة بعض علامات الترقيم التي تساعد في الكتابة بشكل سليم.



Capital letters
الحروف الكبيرة

في بداية الجملة (الخبرية/ الأمرية) / أيام الأسبوع/ الشهور/ الضمير (أ) في أي مكان بالجملة/ اللغات/ الجنسيات/ أسماء الأشخاص/ البلدان/ الأماكن الشهيرة.

1. Ali lives in Aswan.
2. Hoda speaks English and French.
3. I visited Alexandria last June.
4. Dad will arrive on Tuesday.

✓ Checkpoint Punctuate the following:

- 1 ola is an english teacher.
- 2 my dad's name is sami.
- 3 yesterday was sunday.



Period (Full stop)
النقطة

في نهاية الجملة الخبرية والأمرية.

Dad goes to work by bus.
Open the door, please.



Question mark
علامة الاستفهام

في نهاية السؤال.

- * **Wh- Question:**
Where are my keys?
- * **Yes/No Question:**
Do you have a car?



Exclamation point
علامة التعجب

نضع علامة التعجب (!) في نهاية العبارات أو الجمل التي تعبر عن الترحيب أو التعجب أو الشعور القوي.

Hello!/ Wow!/ I'm excited!

✓ Checkpoint Punctuate the following using (. - ? - !):

- 1 The newspaper is on the table
- 2 What are you doing
- 3 I love chocolate cakes
- 4 Well done
- 5 Are you hungry
- 6 Hi



Comma
الفاصلة السفلى

نستخدم الفاصلة السفلى عندما نكتب قائمة بالأشياء أو العبارات.

Mom bought some milk, eggs, and bread.

نستخدم بعد «Yes/ No» في الإجابات.

No, Dad isn't here.

نستخدم قبل «but».

I like singing, but I don't like drawing.

نستخدم قبل «please» إذا جاءت في نهاية الجملة.

Can I have some water, please?

✓ Checkpoint Put the (,) in the right place:

- ① Can you help me please?
- ② Hossam is good at playing football tennis and handball.
- ③ Yes I will be there on time.



Apostrophe
الفاصلة العليا

نوضع قبل «s» الملكية.

Nour's birthday is tomorrow.

نوضع في الاختصارات.

There's a book under the desk.

Omar isn't at school.

✓ Checkpoint Put the (') in the right place:

- ① Omar s dad is a teacher.
- ② We re playing football.
- ③ Where s your house?

Practice on Punctuation Marks

Find and write TWO (2) missing punctuation marks:

- ① adel likes reading writing, and painting.
- ② Mrs. Mona is an english teacher
.....
- ③ What s your favorite hobby
.....
- ④ where does Hana live
.....
- ⑤ No she isn't from alexandria.
- ⑥ i like playing football
.....
- ⑦ don't talk in the library please.



Tips for Writing a Paragraph

نصائح لكتابة فقرة

اقرأ هذا الجزء جيدًا للتعرف على طريقة الكتابة الصحيحة للفقرة الإنشائية.

ضع عنوانًا للفقرة.

استخدم الزمن المناسب.

أول كل جملة حرف capital

My city

My name **is** Nadia, and I **live** in Alexandria. **A**lexandria is a wonderful city to live in. We live in a big house next to the Alexandria Library. **T**here are many places to visit in Alexandria. You can visit museums, parks, and the beach. You can visit the Alexandria Library if you like reading. I love my city.

نهاية كل جملة (period)

تأكد من استخدام علامات الترقيم بطريقة صحيحة (comma)

- استخدم جملًا بسيطة ومرتبّة.

- تأكد من عدم وجود أخطاء إملائية.

لاحظ الآتي:

Now, it's your turn. الآن حان دورك.

Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

"My family"

big – two brothers – doctor



MODULE 1

Unit 1 : The Five Senses

Unit 2 : My Community

Unit

1

The Five Senses

الحواس الخمس



Learning Outcomes

• By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

• بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون الطالب قادرًا على أن:

Speaking:

- ask and answer questions about the importance of senses.
- talk about health habits in pairs.
- deliver a presentation on healthy eating habits.

- * يسأل ويجيب عن أسئلة حول أهمية الحواس.
- * يتحدث عن العادات الصحية في ثنائيات.
- * يقدم عرضًا عن عادات الأكل الصحي.

Listening:

- identify vocabulary related to the five senses.
- answer comprehension questions in a listening dialog.
- recognize short and long vowels as in "pen" and "feed".

- * يتعرف على الكلمات المتعلقة بالحواس الخمس.
- * يجيب عن أسئلة الفهم من خلال نص استماعي.
- * يميز بين أصوات الحروف القصيرة والطويلة كما في كلمتي "pen" و "feed".

Reading:

- answer questions about healthy habits.
- identify the setting and characters.
- order daily events using sequence words.

- * يجيب عن أسئلة حول العادات الصحية.
- * يحدد المكان والشخصيات.
- * يرتب الأحداث اليومية باستخدام كلمات الترتيب.

Writing:

- use the present simple tense to write meaningful sentences.
- write a daily routine using sequence words.
- plan a presentation on healthy eating habits.

- * يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط لكتابة جمل ذات معنى.
- * يكتب الروتين اليومي باستخدام كلمات التسلسل.
- * يخطط لتقديم عرض عن عادات الأكل الصحية.



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:

Main vocabulary



taste
يتذوق



see
يرى



smell
يشم



hear
تسمع



touch
يلمس

Extra vocabulary

senses

الحواس

children

أطفال

amazing (adj.)

رائع

world

العالم

sight

الرؤية/النظر

butterflies

فراشات

excellent

ممتاز

smoke

دخان

fire

حريق

voice

صوت

delicious (adj.)

لذيذ / شهى

tongue

لسان

Expressions and Phrases

What a beautiful day!

يا له من يوم جميل!

What else?

ماذا أيضًا؟

That's a great question.

إنه سؤال رائع.

for example,

على سبيل المثال

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

Past

talk

يتحدث

talked

Present

Past

use

يستخدم

used

smell

يشم

smelled

taste

يتذوق

tasted

touch

يلمس

touched

help

يساعد

helped

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

Past

hear

يسمع

heard

see

يرى

saw

learn

يتعلم

learned / learnt

understand

يفهم

understood

"Let's talk about our senses"

هيا نتحدث عن حواسنا



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:

- Ms. Mona and the students are talking about the five senses.

أستاذة منى والطلاب يتحدثون عن الحواس الخمس.



Ms. Mona

Good morning, children! What a beautiful day in the school garden!

صباح الخير يا أطفال! يا له من يوم جميل في حديقة المدرسة!

Good morning, Ms. Mona! What will we learn today?

صباح الخير، أستاذة منى! ماذا سنتعلم اليوم؟



Sami



Ms. Mona

Today, we'll learn about our amazing senses.

اليوم سنتعلم عن حواسنا المدهشة.

What are senses, Ms. Mona?

ما هي الحواس، أستاذة منى؟



Salma



Ms. Mona

Senses help us understand the world around us—like sight, hearing, and smell.

الحواس تساعدنا على فهم العالم من حولنا - مثل النظر، والسمع، والشم.

I can hear birds singing!

أستطيع سماع الطيور تغنى!



Sami



Ms. Mona

Yes! That's your sense of hearing. What else can we use?

نعم! هذه هي حاسة السمع لديك. ماذا يمكننا أن نستخدم أيضًا؟



Salma

I can smell the flowers and see the colorful butterflies!

أستطيع شمّ الزهور ورؤية الفراشات الملونة!



Ms. Mona

Excellent, Salma! Those are your senses of smell and sight. Senses also help us stay safe.

ممتازة يا سلمى! هاتان هما حاستا الشم والبصر لديك. الحواس تساعدنا أيضًا على أن نبقى بأمان.

Ms. Mona, how do our senses help us stay safe?

أستاذة منى، كيف تساعدنا الحواس على أن نكون بأمان؟



Sami



Ms. Mona

That's a great question, Sami! For example, if we smell smoke, we know there's a fire.

سؤال رائع يا سامي! على سبيل المثال، إذا شممتنا رائحة دخان، نعرف أن هناك حريقًا.



Read again and answer: SB اقرأ مرة ثانية وأجب:

- 1 What can Sami hear?
- 2 What senses do we use to see butterflies?
- 3 How can our senses help us stay safe?



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Ms. Mona and the children are in the school garden. الأستاذة منى والأطفال في حديقة المدرسة.
- ✓ They are learning about the five senses. هم يتعلمون عن الحواس الخمس.
- ✓ Our senses help us understand the world around us, like sight and hearing. الحواس تساعدنا على فهم العالم من حولنا، مثل النظر والسمع.
- ✓ Sami hears the birds singing with his sense of hearing. يسمع سامي الطيور تغنى باستخدام حاسة السمع.
- ✓ Salma uses her senses of smell and sight to smell the flowers and see the butterflies. تستخدم سلمى حاستي الشم والبصر لتشم الزهور وترى الفراشات.
- ✓ Senses also keep us safe, like smelling smoke can help us know there is a fire. الحواس تساعدنا على أن نكون آمنين أيضًا، مثل شمّ الدخان يساعدنا في معرفة أن هناك حريقًا.



Checkpoint

Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للمفردات اللغوية.

- 1 Senses help us (talk – understand – eat – feed) the world around us.
- 2 I (hear – taste – touch – smell) a loud noise. SB
- 3 My tongue helps me (touch – see – smell – taste) food.
- 4 I (hear – see – touch – smell) with my hands. SB
- 5 I (taste – touch – see – smell) with my eyes. SB
- 6 If we smell smoke, we know there's a (butterfly – flower – bird – fire).



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 We have a lesson today about our five
 a) eyes b) senses c) birds d) tongues
- 2 When we eat, we use our to taste the food.
 a) nose b) arm c) eye d) tongue
- 3 We can hear the birds singing using our sense of
 a) hearing b) sight c) smell d) touch
- 4 Our senses help us stay
 a) happy b) safe c) excited d) sad

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 I can the flowers in the garden.
 a) taste b) eat c) smell d) hear
- 2 We use our hands to things.
 a) touch b) smell c) see d) taste
- 3 Salma about senses at school.
 a) uses b) learns c) touches d) sees
- 4 I colors and shapes with my eyes. **SB**
 a) hear b) smell c) taste d) see
- 5 She the cake and it was delicious.
 a) saw b) tasted c) heard d) smelled
- 6 I love to see the butterflies in the garden.
 a) delicious b) sad c) colorful d) safe
- 7 Lama hears music and voices with her
 a) mouth b) tongue c) eyes d) ears
- 8 Omar soft and hard things with his hands.
 a) touches b) smells c) sees d) tastes

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

senses – ears – smell – see – hands

We have five amazing senses. These are hearing, seeing, smelling, tasting, and touching. We use our (1)..... to hear sounds like music. Our eyes help us (2)..... colorful things like butterflies. We (3)..... flowers and smoke with our nose. Our (4)..... help us know the world around us and keep us safe.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Senses are part of everything we do. When we walk in the garden, we see colorful butterflies and smell flowers. At home, we hear the TV or someone's voice. We taste food, like cake or fruit, with our tongue. Touching helps us feel cold, hot, soft, or hard things. Our five senses work together to help us understand and enjoy the world. They also help us stay safe. For example, if we smell or see smoke, that can help us know there's a fire.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about
 a) gardens b) butterflies c) senses d) fires
- 2 We taste food with our
 a) ears b) tongue c) eyes d) hands

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What sense do we use to feel cold, soft, or hard things?

- 4 How can senses help us stay safe?

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1 what are senses

- 2 we'll learn about our amazing senses

6 Write a paragraph of about (18 - 24) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من (18 - 24) كلمة مستخدمًا العناصر الآتية:

"Our senses"

hearing – smelling – understand





Lesson 2

Healthy Habits

عادات صحية



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

healthy (adj.)	صحي	habits	عادات	energy	طاقة
early	مبكراً	after that	بعد ذلك	mind	عقل

Extra vocabulary

simple (adj.)	بسيط	breakfast	وجبة الإفطار	brown bread	خبز أسمر (خبز صحي)
plenty of water	الكثير من الماء	during	أثناء	break time	وقت الفسحة
fresh (adj.)	طازج	vegetables	خضراوات	vitamins	فيتامينات
sweets	حلوى	again	مرة أخرى	enough	كافي

Expressions and Phrases

10-year-old girl	بنت ذات عشر سنوات	stay strong	تبقى قوية
do exercise	يتدرب	too many	الكثير من
her mind stay sharp	تبقى حاضرة الذهن (يبقى عقلها منبسطاً)	do well	تؤدي جيداً

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
follow	followed	help	helped
brush	brushed	enjoy	enjoyed

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
wake up	woke up	give	gave
grow	grew	take	took

My Healthy Day

يومي الصحي



Warm up

What healthy habits do you practice?

SB

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.



Look and read:

انظر و اقرأ:

Sarah is a **healthy**⁽¹⁾ 10-year-old girl. She follows good **habits**⁽²⁾ every day to stay strong and healthy.

In the morning, Sarah wakes up early at 6:00 a.m.

She brushes her teeth and washes her face.

Next, she does some **simple**⁽³⁾ exercises in the garden.

For **breakfast**⁽⁴⁾, Sarah eats healthy food. She drinks orange juice and eats eggs and **brown bread**⁽⁵⁾. These foods give her **energy**⁽⁶⁾ for the day.

At school, Sarah drinks **plenty of water**⁽⁷⁾ between classes.

She plays sports with her friends **during break time**⁽⁸⁾.

In the afternoon, Sarah does her homework first. After that, she helps her mother in the garden. They grow **fresh vegetables**⁽⁹⁾ together.

For dinner, Sarah eats lots of vegetables and fruits. These give her important **vitamins**⁽¹⁰⁾. She doesn't eat too many **sweets**⁽¹¹⁾.

In the evening, Sarah takes a shower and brushes her teeth **again**⁽¹²⁾. She goes to bed early at 8:30 p.m. She sleeps for 9 hours every night. Getting **enough**⁽¹³⁾ sleep helps her body stay healthy and her mind stay sharp.

Sarah's healthy habits help her feel good and do well at school.

She has lots of energy to learn, play, and enjoy her day!



- | | |
|-----|--------------------|
| (1) | صحي |
| (2) | عادات |
| (3) | بسيط |
| (4) | وجبة الإفطار |
| (5) | خبز أسمر (خبز صحي) |
| (6) | طاقة |



- | | |
|------|------------------|
| (7) | الكثير من الماء |
| (8) | أثناء وقت الفسحة |
| (9) | خضراوات طازجة |
| (10) | فيتامينات |
| (11) | حلوى |



- | | |
|------|----------|
| (12) | مرة أخرى |
| (13) | كافي |



Read again and answer: **SB** اقرأ مرة ثانية وأجب:

1 Why does Sarah eat healthy food?

2 How do healthy habits help Sarah at school?

3 Who does Sarah help in the afternoon?

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الاجابه الصحيحه:

1 Sarah does exercises in the

- a) room b) garden c) school d) library

2 For breakfast, Sarah drinks

- a) tea b) orange juice c) milk d) coffee

3 In the afternoon, Sarah

- a) watches TV b) plays video games
c) does her homework d) goes to sleep

4 Sarah's healthy habits help her

- a) feel good b) eat enough food c) make friends d) win competitions



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

✓ Sarah is a healthy 10-year-old girl.

سارة فتاة في العاشرة من عمرها تتمتع بصحة جيدة.

✓ She wakes up early and does exercises in the morning.

تستيقظ مبكرًا وتقوم بتمارين في الصباح.

✓ She eats healthy food like eggs, brown bread, and fruits.

تأكل طعامًا صحيًا مثل البيض، والخبز الأسمر، والفواكه.

✓ She drinks water and plays sports at school.

تشرب الماء وتلعب الرياضة في المدرسة.

✓ She eats vegetables and doesn't eat many sweets.

تأكل الخضراوات ولا تأكل الكثير من الحلويات.

✓ Sarah's healthy habits help her feel good and do well at school.

عادات سارة الصحية تساعد على الشعور بالراحة والتفوق في المدرسة.

The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

- We use the present simple tense to talk about daily habits and routines.

يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن العادات اليومية والروتين.

Affirmative form:

صيغة الإثبات:

I/ We/ They/ You + (inf.) ... (الفعل في المصدر)

e.g. Some children **play** sports after school.

He/ She/ It + (inf.) s / es / ies ... (الفعل في المصدر)

e.g. She **wakes up** early every day.

معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (s):

play → plays

e.g. He **plays** football every day.

الأفعال المنتهية بـ (ss/sh/ch/o/x/z)، يضاف لها (es):

brush → brushes

e.g. She **brushes** her teeth every day.

الأفعال المنتهية بـ (y) مسبوقاً بحرف ساكن، يحذف الـ (y) ويضاف لها (ies):

carry → carries

e.g. She **carries** her backpack every day.



Got it:

Lara (eat) healthy food.

- (Lara) فاعل مفرد، وبالتالي يجب أن يكون الفعل مضارعاً إليه (s)، لذا يجب أن تكون الإجابة (eats).

✓ Checkpoint 1. Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للقواعد اللغوية.

- Many doctors (**works** – working – work – to work) at the hospital.
- My dad (**played** – plays – playing – play) football with me on weekends.
- Omar and Adham (**eat** – eats – to eat – eating) breakfast at 7 a.m.
- Sama (**reads** – read – is reading – to read) a book every night.

2. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

- They (likes) coffee.
- She (take) vitamins every morning. **SB**
- My brother and I (watches) TV in the evening. **SB**
- Sameh (eat) vegetables every day.

Quick Practice on The Present Simple Tense

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

- 1 Adam (walk) to school every day.
- 2 My sisters and I (does) our homework in the evening.
- 3 We (plays) games during break time.
- 4 Laila (study) English at school.
- 5 They (reading) stories in the library.
- 6 The school bell (ring) at 7:30 a.m.
- 7 My mom (cook) delicious food.
- 8 He (watch) cartoons on TV every night.
- 9 She (enjoy) sunny days.
- 10 I (wakes) up at 6 a.m.
- 11 My dad (read) the newspaper every day.
- 12 Sarah (eat) vegetables for dinner.
- 13 The boys (goes) to school by bus.
- 14 The sun (rise) in the east.
- 15 Birds (flies) in the sky.

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

- 1 eats – Sarah – food – healthy.
.....
- 2 eat – at – They – 1 p.m. – lunch.
.....
- 3 sleeps – every day – He – early.
.....
- 4 take – in the evening – I – a shower.
.....
- 5 My – likes to – coffee – grandpa – drink.
.....



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 It's important to good habits every day to stay strong.
a) eat b) help c) follow d) drink
- 2 I some simple exercise in my room.
a) wash b) brush c) get d) do
- 3 For breakfast, you should eat food.
a) healthy b) unhealthy c) bad d) cold
- 4 Healthy food gives us for the day.
a) money b) juice c) sweets d) energy
- 5 Omar drinks of water during the day.
a) fresh b) plenty c) sharp d) well
- 6 Karma her homework in the evening.
a) takes b) does c) makes d) helps
- 7 Healthy habits help us feel good and well at school.
a) sleep b) has c) take d) do
- 8 Getting enough sleep helps our minds stay
a) sharp b) bad c) sad d) simple
- 9 Vegetables and fruits give us important
a) games b) stories c) vitamins d) clothes
- 10 It's healthy to eat eggs and for breakfast. Super Question ?
a) sweets b) brown bread c) pizza d) cakes

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

healthy – go – do – grow – sports

My name is Zein. At school, I play (1)..... with my friends during break time. I drink a lot of water between classes. After school, I go home and (2)..... my homework. Then, I help my mom in the garden. We (3)..... vegetables together. For dinner, I eat vegetables and fruits. I don't eat many sweets. My day is full of (4)..... choices.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Nouran is a healthy girl. Every morning, she wakes up early at 6:30 a.m. She brushes her teeth and washes her face. Then, she does some easy exercises in her room. For breakfast, she eats eggs and brown bread. She also drinks orange juice. These healthy foods give her energy for the day. Nouran likes to start her day in a good way. Her healthy habits help her feel fresh and strong every morning.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Nouran eats eggs and brown bread for
a) dinner b) breakfast c) snack d) lunch
- Her habits help her feel fresh and strong.
a) bad b) morning c) healthy d) simple

B Answer the following questions:

- When does Nouran wake up?
- Where does she do exercises?

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

- The nurse (help) sick people. **SB**
- The students (listening) to their teacher carefully.
- Mayar (drink) orange juice.
- Hazem (love) his cat.
- We (learns) new things at school.
- My friends (visits) me every Friday.
- The girls (plays) tennis on Mondays.
- Hassan (brush) his teeth every morning.
- I (likes) apples because they're healthy.
- My mother (go) to work by bus.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- amr likes healthy food

- she reads in the morning



Story



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

market	سوق	hungry (adj.)	جائع	food	طعام
restaurant	مطعم	owner	مالك	greedy (adj.)	طماع
coins	عملات معدنية	jingling	صوت رنين	share	يشارك

Extra vocabulary

walk through	يمشي خلال	suddenly	فجأة	wonderful	رائع
deep breath	نفس عميق	yummy smell	رائحة شهية	soup	شورية
a few	القليل من	pocket	جيب	better	أفضل

Expressions and Phrases

feel less hungry	أشعر بالجوع قليلاً	for free	مجاناً
pay for it	تدفع مقابل ذلك	come inside	تعال إلى الداخل

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
walk	walked	stop	stopped
ask	asked	laugh	laughed

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
sit	sat	pay	paid
think	thought	take out	took out
shake	shook	come	came

Definitions

owner	someone who has something	الشخص الذي يملك شيئاً ما
jingling	a light, ringing sound	صوت رنين خفيف
share	to give some of what you have to others	أن تعطي بعضاً مما تملك للآخرين
hungry	wanting to eat	يريد أن يأكل
greedy	always wanting more than what is needed	دائماً يريد أكثر مما يحتاج

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Beginning : Meet the people/ Know the place.

One morning, Goha was walking through the **market**⁽¹⁾. He was very **hungry**⁽²⁾, but didn't have enough money to buy **food**⁽³⁾. **Suddenly**⁽⁴⁾, he smelled something **wonderful**⁽⁵⁾. The **yummy smell**⁽⁶⁾ was coming from a **restaurant's**⁽⁷⁾ window. Goha stopped and sat outside the restaurant. He closed his eyes and took a **deep breath**⁽⁸⁾. "Ah," he said. "This wonderful smell makes me feel less hungry!"



- (1) سوق
(2) جائع
(3) طعام
(4) فجأة
(5) رائحة
(6) رائحة شهية
(7) مطعم
(8) نفس عميق

✓ **Checkpoint** Goha was walking through the market. He was very (**tired** – **sad** – **hungry** – **thirsty**).

Problem: Something goes wrong.

The restaurant **owner**⁽⁹⁾ saw Goha and asked, "What are you doing?" Goha said, "I'm enjoying the smell of your delicious **soup**⁽¹⁰⁾." The owner was **greedy**⁽¹¹⁾. He said, "You can't smell the soup **for free**⁽¹²⁾! You must **pay for it**⁽¹³⁾!"

- (9) مالك
(10) شوربة
(11) طماع
(12) مجاناً
(13) تدفع مقابل ذلك

✓ **Checkpoint** The owner was (**clever** – **greedy** – **kind** – **nice**).

Middle: The character tries to fix it.

Goha thought for a moment. Then, he took out a few **coins**⁽¹⁴⁾ from his **pocket**⁽¹⁵⁾. He shook them in his hand, and they made a **jingling**⁽¹⁶⁾ sound.

Climax: The most exciting part.

"Here," said Goha. "If you want money for the smell of your soup, then you can take the **sound**⁽¹⁷⁾ of my coins."

- (14) عملات معدنية
(15) جيب
(16) صوت رنين
(17) صوت
(18) يشارك

Ending: The problem is solved.

The owner laughed at Goha's clever answer. "Come inside," he said. "Let's **share**⁽¹⁸⁾ this soup. Good food tastes better when shared with others!"

✓ **Checkpoint** Goha's answer was (**bad** – **wrong** – **clever** – **funny**).

The moral of the story

Good food tastes better when shared with others. الطعام اللذيذ يكون أطيب عند مشاركته مع الآخرين.



Tip!

The story elements are:

عناصر القصة هي:

Characters: the people and animals in a story
الشخصيات: هي الناس أو الحيوانات في القصة

Setting: the time and place of a story
الإطار الزمني والمكاني

Plot : الحبكة



Goha



The restaurant owner

Time الوقت
one morning

place المكان
at a restaurant

Beginning / Problem / Middle / Climax/ Ending



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Goha was very hungry, but he didn't have enough money.
كان جحا جائعًا جدًا، ولكنه لم يكن يملك المال الكافي.
- ✓ He smelled something wonderful from a restaurant's window. شمر شيئًا رائعًا من نافذة مطعم.
- ✓ He stopped and sat outside the restaurant to enjoy the smell of the delicious soup.
توقف وجلس خارج المطعم ليستمع برائحة الشوربة الشهية.
- ✓ The owner was greedy and said you must pay for this smell.
مالك المطعم كان طماعًا، وقال له يجب أن تدفع مقابل هذه الرائحة.
- ✓ Goha was clever, he shook some coins in his hand.
كان جحا ماهرًا، لقد حرك بعض العملات المعدنية في يده.
- ✓ "Take the sound of my coins," said Goha.
قال جحا: "خذ صوت عملاتي المعدنية".
- ✓ The owner laughed and said, "Let's share this soup". ضحك المالك وقال: "هيا نتشارك هذه الشوربة".



Read again and answer: اقرأ مرة ثانية وأجب:

1 Why did Goha sit outside the restaurant?

2 How was Goha clever in solving the problem?

3 What lesson do we learn from this story?



Pronunciation

Short and long vowels الحروف المتحركة الطويلة والقصيرة



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:

There are five vowels in English: **a, e, i, o, and u**

Short vowels

أصوات الحروف المتحركة القصيرة

- are pronounced quickly and not pronounced as their letter name, like
هي أصوات تنطق سريعاً ولا تنطق كأسم الحرف نفسه

a

/æ/

hat



cat



rat



o

/ɒ/

pot



hot



e

/e/

pen



Long vowels

أصوات الحروف المتحركة الطويلة

- are pronounced the same way as their letter name
هي أصوات تنطق بنفس طريقة نطق اسم الحرف الخاص به

ee / ea

/i:/

feed



heat



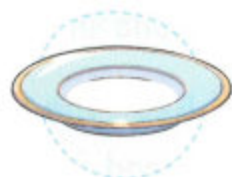
bean



a-e

/eɪ/

plate



o-e

/əʊ/

home





1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The word "....." means someone who has something.
a) share b) owner c) jingling d) greedy
- 2 I have a lot of coins in my pocket. They made a sound.
a) jingling b) jumping c) shouting d) crying
- 3 We can't eat in a restaurant for free, we must for our food.
a) taste b) laugh c) stop d) pay
- 4 The wonderful smell of bread makes me feel less
a) hungry b) thirsty c) greedy d) tired
- 5 My sister is not She likes to give me food from her lunch box.
a) kind b) greedy c) hungry d) sleepy
- 6 Good food tastes better when with others.
a) walked b) shook c) shared d) paid
- 7 I go to the to buy some food.
a) market b) school c) club d) bank
- 8 I washed the after dinner. **SB**
a) bean b) feed c) plates d) heat

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

smell – coins – restaurant – share – pay

One day, Goha was hungry but he didn't have enough money to buy food. He smelled delicious soup from a (1)..... . He sat outside, enjoying the (2)..... of it. The owner asked Goha to pay for the smell. Goha cleverly offered to pay with the sound of his (3)..... . The owner laughed and invited Goha in to (4)..... the soup with him.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

I read a funny story about a man named Goha. One day, he was very hungry, but he didn't have enough money for food. He found a restaurant with a yummy smell of soup. He sat outside and smelled it. The restaurant owner was greedy and asked Goha to pay for the smell! Goha shook his coins to make a jingling sound and said, "Here's the sound for your smell!" The man laughed and gave him soup.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Goha was very
 a) hungry b) tired c) thirsty d) greedy
- 2 The owner asked Goha to for the smell.
 a) sat b) share c) laugh d) pay

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Why did the restaurant owner laugh?

.....

- 4 Summarize the text in two sentences.

.....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

- 1 are – What – doing – you?

.....

- 2 share – this – Let's – soup.

.....

- 3 was – through – Goha – walking – the market.

.....

- 4 was – The restaurant – greedy – owner.

.....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1 i'm enjoying the smell of the delicious soup

.....

- 2 The owner laughed at goha's clever answer

.....



Lessons 4 and 5

Sequence Words

كلمات التسلسل



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

First	أولاً	Next	بعد ذلك	Then	ثم
After that	بعد ذلك	After school	بعد المدرسة	Finally	في النهاية

Extra vocabulary

daily routine	الروتين اليومي	important (adj.)	هام	the same	نفس الشيء
snack	وجبة خفيفة	hour	ساعة	because	لأن

Expressions and Phrases

Let me ...	دعني ...	get dressed	يرتدي
------------	----------	-------------	-------

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs		أفعال منتظمة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
study	يذاكر / studied	include	يتضمن / included
Irregular verbs		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
tell	يخبر / told	keep	يحافظ على / kept

The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- Having healthy habits helps me stay strong. إن العادات الصحية تساعدني على البقاء قويًا.
- First, I wake up early at 6:00 a.m. and brush my teeth. أولاً، أستيقظ مبكرًا في الساعة السادسة صباحًا وأغسل أسناني.
- Next, I have a healthy breakfast, including milk and fruit. بعد ذلك، أتناول فطورًا صحيًا يتضمن الحليب والفواكه.
- Then, I go to school, where I study and play with my friends. ثم أذهب إلى المدرسة، حيث أدرس وألعب مع أصدقائي.
- After school, I have lunch with my family. بعد المدرسة، أتناول الغداء مع عائلتي.
- After that, I do my homework and then play sports for one hour. بعد ذلك، أؤدي واجباتي المدرسية ثم أمارس الرياضة لمدة ساعة.
- Finally, I go to bed at 9:00 p.m. وأخيرًا، أذهب إلى النوم في الساعة التاسعة مساءً.

My Healthy Life حياتي الصحية



Warm up

How can you stay healthy?



يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.



Having a **daily routine**⁽¹⁾ is **important**⁽²⁾. Let me tell you about my healthy habits and how they help me stay strong. Every day, I follow **the same**⁽³⁾ routine. **First**⁽⁴⁾, I wake up early at 6:00 a.m. and brush my teeth. I wash my face and **get dressed**⁽⁵⁾ for school. **Next**⁽⁶⁾, I have a healthy breakfast, **including**⁽⁷⁾ milk and fruit.

Then⁽⁸⁾, I go to school, where I study and play with my friends. During break time, I eat a healthy **snack**⁽⁹⁾ and drink water. **After school**⁽¹⁰⁾, I have lunch with my family. **After that**⁽¹¹⁾, I do my homework and then play sports for one **hour**⁽¹²⁾. In the evening, I take a shower and have dinner. **Finally**⁽¹³⁾, I go to bed at 9:00 p.m. because sleeping early keeps me healthy.



- | | |
|------|----------------|
| (1) | الروتين اليومي |
| (2) | هام |
| (3) | نفس الشيء |
| (4) | أولاً |
| (5) | يرتدي ملابسه |
| (6) | بعد ذلك |
| (7) | يتضمن |
| (8) | ثم |
| (9) | وجبة خفيفة |
| (10) | بعد المدرسة |
| (11) | بعد ذلك |
| (12) | ساعة |
| (13) | في النهاية |



Tip!

Sequence words help us show the order of actions or events. They tell us what happens at the beginning, in the middle, and at the end. They are:

تساعدنا كلمات التسلسل على توضيح ترتيب الأحداث. فهي تُخبرنا بما يحدث في البداية، وفي المنتصف، وفي النهاية، وهي:

First, ... Next, ... Then, ... After that, ... Finally, ...



اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Having a daily routine is
a) bad b) unhealthy c) important d) unhappy
- 2 First, I wash my face and dressed for school.
a) go b) get c) play d) have
- 3 I have a healthy breakfast, including and fruits.
a) milk b) cola c) sweets d) burgers
- 4 I go to school, where I and play with my friends.
a) sleep b) eat c) run d) study
- 5 Sleeping early keeps me
a) healthy b) tired c) sad d) angry
- 6 In the evening, I take a shower and dinner.
a) tell b) help c) have d) go
- 7 Amgad plays for one hour every day.
a) shower b) sports c) dressed d) routine

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

First – routine – that – finally – school

My name is Adam. I have a daily (1)..... that helps me stay strong and healthy. Every day, I wake up at 6:00 a.m. (2)....., I brush my teeth and wash my face. Then, I get dressed for school. After (3)....., I eat a healthy breakfast with milk and fruit. It gives me energy for the day. I go to (4)....., study hard, and play with my friends. I enjoy spending my day like this.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Hadeer. First, I wake up at 6:30 in the morning. I brush my teeth and wash my face. Then, I help my mother make breakfast. I eat eggs and cheese and drink juice. After that, I get dressed in my school uniform and go to school. At school, I study, read books, and talk with my friends. Finally, I go home in the afternoon. I like my routine because it keeps me happy and ready for the day.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about ".....".
 - a) Hadeer's school
 - b) Hadeer's mother
 - c) Hadeer's routine
 - d) Hadeer's health
- 2 Hadeer wakes up at in the morning.
 - a) six o'clock
 - b) six thirty
 - c) seven o'clock
 - d) seven thirty

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What does Hadeer do at school?
.....
- 4 Why does Hadeer like her routine?
.....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

- 1 wash – I – First, – face – my.
.....
- 2 early – keeps – Sleeping – me – healthy.
.....
- 3 sports – plays – Omar – for – one hour.
.....
- 4 at – go – bed – to – 9:00 p.m. – I. Super Question ?
.....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1 i follow a daily routine
.....
- 2 what's your daily routine Sama?
.....

6 Write a paragraph of about (18 - 24) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من (18 - 24) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

"My healthy daily routine"

First – Next – Finally



Unit 1

REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

taste	يتذوق	see	يرى
smell	يشم	hear	يسمع
touch	يلمس	senses	الحواس
amazing	رائع	the world	العالم
butterflies	فراشات	smoke	دخان
fire	حريق	tongue	لسان

Lesson (2)

healthy	صحي	habits	عادات
energy	طاقة	early	مبكراً
after that	بعد ذلك	mind	عقل
brown bread	خبز أسمر (خبز صحي)	plenty of water	الكثير من الماء
vitamins	فيتامينات	enough	كافي
fresh	طازج	sweets	حلوى

Lesson (3)

market	سوق	hungry	جائع
food	طعام	restaurant	مطعم
owner	مالك	greedy	طماع
coins	عملات معدنية	jingling	صوت رنين
share	يشارك	walk through	يمشي خلال
suddenly	فجأة	soup	شورية
deep breath	نفس عميق	pocket	جيب

Lessons (4 and 5)

First	أولاً	Next	بعد ذلك
Then	ثم	After that	بعد ذلك
after school	بعد المدرسة	Finally	في النهاية
daily routine	الروتين اليومي	important	هام
the same	نفس الشيء	snack	وجبة خفيفة

Language in use

- We use the present simple tense to talk about daily habits and routines.

يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن العادات اليومية والروتين.

Affirmative form:

صيغة الإثبات:

I/ We/ They/ You + (inf.) ... (الفعل في المصدر)

e.g. Some children **play** sports after school.

He/ She/ It + (inf.) s / es / ies ... (الفعل في المصدر)

e.g. She **wakes up** early every day.

Unit 1

CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

الكلمة بالإنجليزية	الكلمة بالعربية
butterflies	ممتاز
voice	يسمع
colorful	لسان
taste	حريق
delicious	أطفال

Lesson 2

breakfast	خبز أسمر
sweets	خضراوات
early	بسيط
plenty of water	فيتامينات
healthy	كافي

Lesson 3

walk through	طماع
yummy smell	جيب
market	يشارك
jingling	شورية
coins	مالك

Lessons 4 and 5

get dressed	وجبة خفيفة
important	أولاً
finally	بعد المدرسة
daily routine	في النهاية

Conjugation of verbs

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس مدى حفظ الطالب لتصريفات الأفعال.

تصريف الأفعال

Present

Past

Present

Past

wake up

paid

took

taste

learn

heard

use

keep

”تسميع كلمات أكثر خاصة بهذه الوحدة .. اذهب إلى كراسة التسميع آخر الكتاب“.

1 Read and correct the underlined mistakes.

- 1 We sees with our eyes.
- 2 Ali eat healthy food every day.
- 3 My sister and I sleeps early every night.
- 4 Layla drink water every morning.

2 Read and match:

☐ I taste ...	a) music and voices with my ears.
☐ I touch ...	b) colors and shapes with my eyes.
☐ I smell ...	c) flowers in the garden with my nose.
☐ I hear ...	d) delicious food with my tongue.
☐ I see ...	e) soft and hard things with my hands.

3 Read the sentences and complete with the words in the box.

hear – taste – see – touch – smell

- 1 I with my eyes.
- 2 I with my ears.
- 3 I with my nose.
- 4 I with my tongue.
- 5 I with my hands.



لكي تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about healthy habits:

- o I follow good habits every day.
- o In the morning, + عادات صحية تقوم بفعلها صباحًا.
- o For breakfast, + وجبة فطور صحية.
- o In the afternoon, + عادة صحية تقوم بها ظهرًا.
- o In the evening, + عادة صحية تقوم بها مساءً.
- o My healthy habits make me feel good.

"Healthy habits"

I follow good habits every day. In the morning, I wake up early and brush my teeth. **For breakfast**, I eat eggs, and I drink orange juice. **In the afternoon**, I do my homework. **In the evening**, I take a shower, and I go to bed early. My healthy habits make me feel good.

How to write about your daily routine using sequence words:

- o First, + ما تقوم بفعله أولاً.
- o Next, + ما تقوم به بعد ذلك.
- o Then, + ما تفعله بعده مباشرة.
- o After that, + ما تقوم به لاحقًا.
- o Finally, + ما تقوم به في النهاية.

"My daily routine"

First, I wake up early at 6:00 o'clock in the morning. **Next**, I go to school where I learn new things. **Then**, I come back home and do my homework. **After that**, I help my mom in the kitchen. **Finally**, I take a shower and go to bed early.



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:
(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 We use our eyes to
a) eat b) see c) hear d) smell
- 2 The tongue helps us
a) smell b) touch c) taste d) hear
- 3 Hands are used to
a) see b) touch c) listen d) hear
- 4 The nose is for
a) hearing b) smelling c) touching d) tasting



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 I can the birds singing.
a) touch b) hear c) smell d) taste
- 2 He is He always wants more than what he needs.
a) clever b) early c) healthy d) greedy

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

face – milk – senses – ears – eyes

I wake up early in the morning. I brush my teeth and wash my (1)..... . Then, I eat my breakfast and drink (2)..... . At school, I use my five senses. I hear my teacher with my (3)....., and I see the board with my (4)..... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Sarah wakes up early every day. She brushes her teeth and eats healthy food. At school, she plays with her friends and drinks lots of water. She does her homework and helps her mother. They grow fresh vegetables together. Then, she goes to bed early. She sleeps for 9 hours every night. Getting enough sleep helps her body stay strong.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Sarah brushes her teeth
a) before bed b) after school c) after waking up d) at night
- 2 Sarah drinks at school.
a) juice b) tea c) milk d) water

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What does Sarah eat in the morning?
- 4 How does Sarah help her mother?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

2

- 1 He (wake) up at 6 o'clock.
- 2 Nour (drink) milk every morning.
- 3 She (brush) her teeth every day.
- 4 We (plays) in the garden after school.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

2

my sister eats vegetables every day

7 Write a paragraph of about (18 - 24) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من (18 - 24) كلمة مستخدماً العناصر الآتية:

7

"My healthy day"

healthy food – daily routine – stay strong





Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:
(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

4

- 1 Sarah eats for breakfast.
a) pizza b) sweets c) eggs d) meat
- 2 She drinks at school.
a) water b) tea c) coffee d) milk
- 3 Sarah helps her in the evening.
a) father b) mother c) friend d) teacher
- 4 She sleeps early to
a) watch TV b) stay strong c) eat more d) study well



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

2

- 1 Our senses help us stay
a) safe b) tired c) unhealthy d) angry
- 2 The word "....." means a light, ringing sound.
a) hearing b) evening c) singing d) jingling

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

2

sharp – dinner – school – bed – hours

My name is Hassan. Let me tell you about my healthy habits. In the evening, I take a shower and have (1)..... . Then, I brush my teeth and go to (2)..... . I sleep for nine (3)..... . Getting enough sleep helps my mind stay (4)..... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

5

Omar loves his five senses. He can see the beautiful butterflies with his eyes and hear the birds singing with his ears. He touches soft things with his hands and tastes the delicious food with his tongue. He smells flowers in the garden with his nose. Omar thinks that our senses help us stay safe. For example, if we smell smoke, we know there's a fire.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Omar hears with his
 a) eyes b) hands c) ears d) nose
- 2 Omar smells flowers
 a) at home b) in the garden c) in class d) in the shop

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 How does Omar use his hands?
- 4 How can the five senses help us stay safe?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

8

- 1 She (help) her mother every day.
- 2 They (plays) football on Fridays.
- 3 My father (drink) tea in the morning.
- 4 I (going) to bed at 9 p.m.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

2

can you hear the music

7 Write a paragraph of about (18 - 24) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من (18 - 24) كلمة مستخدماً العناصر الآتية:

7

“Having a daily routine”

important – healthy – strong





A) Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

- 1 Dalia has (clever – healthy – unhealthy) habits.
- 2 She wakes up early at (6 – 9 – 7) a.m.
- 3 She drinks plenty of (milk – cola – water).

4.5

B) Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

vegetables – food – habits – sports

All: Do you follow healthy , Asser?

Asser: Yes, I do. I do a lot of at school.

All: What healthy do you eat?

Asser: I always eat fruits and

8

C) Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

7.5

Malak is a healthy girl. She follows good habits every day to stay strong and healthy. For breakfast, Malak eats healthy food. She drinks orange juice and eats eggs and brown bread. These foods give her energy for the day. At school, Malak drinks plenty of water between classes. She plays sports with her friends during break time.

A Answer the following questions:

- 1 Why does Malak follow good habits every day?
- 2 What does she eat for breakfast?

B Choose the correct answer:

- 3 Healthy food gives her (energy – habits – soup) for the day.
- 4 She drinks plenty of (tea – juice – water).
- 5 She plays (board games – video games – sports) during break time.

D) Vocabulary and Structures

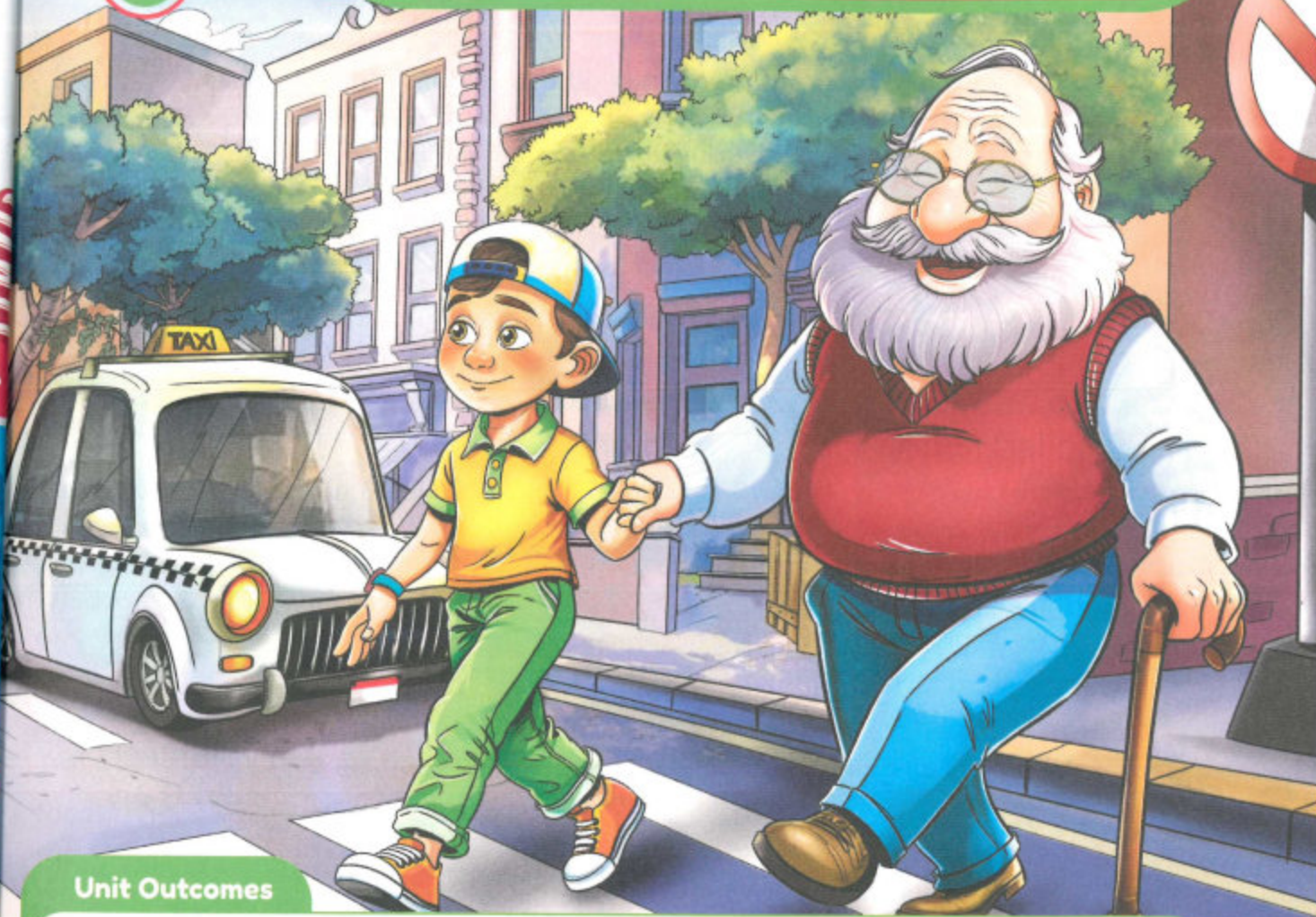
4 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 He (goes – went – go) to school every day.
- 2 She (eat – eating – eats) healthy food every day.
- 3 The yummy smell of soup was coming from the (school – restaurant – garden).
- 4 To (share – own – follow) is to give some of what you have to others.
- 5 I (wash – keep – get) dressed for school.

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1 routine – Having – important – a daily – is.
- 2 early – wake – at 6:00 a.m. – I – up.
- 3 with – I – my – see – eyes.
- 4 breakfast – a healthy – I – have.
- 5 do – I – exercises – simple – in – the garden.

5



Unit Outcomes

● By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

● بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون الطالب قادرًا على أن:

Speaking:

- discuss in pairs ways you can do to help his/her community. - يناقش في ثنائيات الطرق التي يمكن من خلالها مساعدة مجتمعه.
- share stories about his/her community's history and traditions. - يشارك قصصًا عن تاريخ وتقاليد مجتمعه.

Listening:

- identify solutions to community problems. - يحدد حلولًا لمشاكل المجتمع.
- discriminate listening to /f/ and /v/ sounds. - يميز أثناء الاستماع بين صوتي /f/ و /v/.

Reading:

- answer questions about how people help their community based on the information provided in the text. - يجيب عن أسئلة حول كيفية مساعدة الناس لمجتمعهم بناءً على المعلومات المقدمة في النص.
- suggest solutions to problems in the community. - يقترح حلولًا للمشكلات في المجتمع.
- share the information about the traditions and festivals of the Delta region and Upper Egypt. - يشارك المعلومات عن التقاليد والمهرجانات في منطقة الدلتا وصعيد مصر.

Writing:

- write sentences about how he/she helps their community. - يكتب جملًا عن كيفية مساعدة مجتمعه.
- write a diary entry about his/her community's history. - يكتب تدوينًا في مذكراته عن تاريخ مجتمعه.
- create a poster about a community problem and its solution. - يصمم ملصقًا عن مشكلة في المجتمع وحلها.



Lesson 1

Helping the community

مساعدة المجتمع



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، اشر وقل:

Main vocabulary



collect
يجمع



plant
يزرع



clean
ينظف



help
يساعد



feed
يُطعم



volunteer
يتطوع / متطوع

Extra vocabulary

streets شوارع
neighbors جيران

bottles زجاجات
community park حديقة مجتمعية

trash قمامة
clothes ملابس

Expressions and phrases

It's fun to + inf.

إنه من الممتع أن

That's (nice / cool / great)!

هذا رائع!

do a great job

يقوم بعمل رائع

What about you?

ماذا عنك؟

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

Past

Present

Past

help يساعد

helped

need

يحتاج

needed

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

Past

Present

Past

give يعطي

gave

feel

يشعر

felt



Let's say it right!

• لاحظ أن حرفي الـ (gh) في كلمة (neigh**gh**ors) لا ينطقان.

Helping Hands



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:

Amira and Adam are talking about how they help their community.

أميرة وآدم يتحدثان عن كيفية مساعدتهما لمجتمعهما.



Amira

Hello, Adam! What do you do to help our community?

مرحبًا يا آدم! ماذا تفعل لمساعدة مجتمعنا؟

Hello, Amira! I clean trash from the streets with my friends every Saturday.

مرحبًا يا أميرة! أنظف القمامة من الشوارع مع أصدقائي كل يوم سبت.



Adam



Amira

That's cool! Do you plant trees?

هذا رائع! هل تزرع الأشجار؟

Yes, I do. I plant trees in the park.

نعم، أزرع الأشجار في الحديقة.



Adam



Amira

That's nice! Do you do other things to help?

هذا جميل! هل تفعل أشياء أخرى للمساعدة؟

Yes! Sometimes, I feed the dogs and cats. I feel so happy when I give them food!

نعم! أحيانًا أطعم الكلاب والقطط. أشعر بسعادة كبيرة عندما أعطيهم طعامًا!



Adam



Amira

Does your sister help too?

هل تساعد أختك أيضًا؟

Yes, she does! She helps our neighbors, and she volunteers at the community park.

نعم، إنها تساعد! إنها تساعد جيراننا، وتطوع في حديقة المجتمع.



Adam



Amira

Wow! You both do a great job!

واو! أنتما تقومون بعمل رائع!

Thanks! What about you? How do you help?

شكرًا! وماذا عنك؟ كيف تساعد؟



Adam



Amira

I collect clothes and give them to people who need them.

أجمع الملابس وأعطيها للناس الذين يحتاجون إليها.

That's great! When we all help, we make our community great.

هذا رائع! عندما نساعد جميعًا، نجعل مجتمعنا رائعًا.



Adam



Read again and answer: SB

① What does Adam do on Saturday?

.....

② What does Adam plant?

.....

③ What does Amira do with clothes?

.....



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Adam and Amira help in the community. يساعد كل من آدم وأميرة في المجتمع.
- ✓ Adam cleans trash from the streets every Saturday with his friends. آدم ينظف القمامة من الشوارع كل يوم سبت مع أصدقائه.
- ✓ Adam feeds dogs and cats, he feels happy when he helps them. يطعم آدم الكلاب والقطط فهو يشعر بالسعادة عندما يساعدهم.
- ✓ Adam's sister helps neighbors and volunteers at the community park. تساعد أخت آدم جيرانها وتطوع في الحديقة المجتمعية.
- ✓ Amira collects clothes and gives them to people in need. أميرة تجمع الملابس وتعطيها للمحتاجين.
- ✓ When everyone helps, the community becomes great. عندما يساعد الجميع، يصبح المجتمع رائعًا.

Take care !

e.g. They clean the park **on** Fridays.

لاحظ استخدام حرف الجر **on** قبل أيام الأسبوع:



Checkpoint

Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للمفردات اللغوية.

- ① Adam cleans (**trees** – trash – flowers – dogs) from the streets every Saturday.
- ② We can help by planting (**trash** – clothes – trees – animals) in the park.
- ③ Adam's sister volunteers at the community (**store** – park – street – house).
- ④ It's (**bad** – great – sad – terrible) to help our community.
- ⑤ I feed cats and dogs, I feel happy when I (**collect** – give – take – help) them food.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- 1 Adam says he cleans trash on with friends.
a) Sundays b) Mondays c) Tuesdays d) Saturdays
- 2 He also feeds on Wednesdays.
a) birds b) people c) animals d) fish
- 3 His helps neighbors and volunteers too.
a) sister b) mother c) friends d) father
- 4 Amira collects for those in need.
a) money b) clothes c) paper d) trash

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Adam feels happy when he animals.
a) plants b) volunteers c) feeds d) collects
- 2 Mona flowers from her garden every day.
a) sells b) makes c) collects d) plants
- 3 Planting trees helps make our beautiful.
a) community b) library c) car d) class
- 4 The word "volunteer" means to without taking money.
a) run b) eat c) work d) sleep
- 5 We bottles to keep the streets clean.
a) break b) collect c) throw d) hide
- 6 Amira and Adam both their community.
a) leave b) give c) help d) volunteer

Super Question ?

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

community – volunteers – garden – clothes – feeds

Adam and Amira help the community. Adam plants trees and (1)..... dogs and cats. His sister helps people nearby and (2)..... at the community park. Amira gives (3)..... to people who need them. They agree that when everyone helps, the whole (4)..... becomes a better, happier place.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Omar collects trash with friends every week and plants trees in public places. He sometimes feeds hungry cats and dogs. His sister Nourhan joins him by helping neighbors and volunteering in the community park. Their cousin Mariam collects clothes and gives them to people who need them. They're all proud of what they do because helping the community makes it a better and a happier place to live in.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 volunteers in the community park.
 a) Mariam b) Omar c) Nourhan d) Mom
- 2 Mariam clothes to people who need them.
 a) gives b) sells c) buys d) makes

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What does Omar do every week?

- 4 Why are they proud of what they do?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1 do – How – you – your – help – community?

- 2 volunteers – Sohaila – at the – garden – community.

- 3 feeds – My cousin – in his – the – cats – street.

- 4 help – We – in the – park – Monday – every. 

6 Punctuate the following:

- 1 Does adam plant trees

- 2 they help their friends clean the trash



Lesson 2



Community: Problems and solutions

المجتمع: المشاكل والحلول



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

community	مجتمع	fewer cars	عدد أقل من السيارات
bins	صناديق قمامة	ground	الأرض
problem	مشكلة	solution	حل

Extra vocabulary

traffic	ازدحام مروري	quickly	بسرعة	especially	خاصة
instead	بدلاً	road	طريق	everywhere	في كل مكان

Expressions and Phrases

make a difference	يحدث فرقاً	the first	الأولى	I think so.	أعتقد ذلك.
That's right!	هذا صحيح!	the second	الثانية	look dirty	يبدو متسخاً

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
move	mov <u>ed</u>	talk	talk <u>ed</u>
discuss	discuss <u>ed</u>	fix	fix <u>ed</u>
solve	solv <u>ed</u>	reduce	reduc <u>ed</u>

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
throw	threw	take	took



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:

Ali and Mona Make a Difference

على ومنى يحدثان فرقاً



Ali

Our community has many problems, so let's talk about them.

مجتمعنا لديه العديد من المشاكل، فلنتحدث عنها.

OK! Let's also discuss solutions to fix them.

حسنًا! دعنا نناقش أيضًا الحلول لإصلاحها.



Mona



Ali

The first problem is traffic. Cars don't move quickly in the morning, especially near schools.

أول مشكلة هي الازدحام المروري. السيارات لا تتحرك بسرعة في الصباح، خاصةً بالقرب من المدارس.



Do you know how to solve this problem?

هل تعرف كيف نحل هذه المشكلة؟



Mona



Ali

Yes, I think so. We don't need to use cars every day. We can take the school bus instead. There will be fewer cars on the road.

نعم، أعتقد ذلك. لا نحتاج لاستخدام السيارات كل يوم. يمكننا أن نأخذ الأتوبيس المدرسي بدلاً من ذلك. سيكون هناك عدد أقل من السيارات على الطريق.

That's right! The second problem is trash. Some people don't put trash in bins, so the streets look dirty. Does your street have this problem?

هذا صحيح! المشكلة الثانية هي القمامة. بعض الناس لا يضعون القمامة في الصناديق، لذلك تبدو الشوارع متسخة. هل يعاني شارعكم من هذه المشكلة؟



Mona



Ali

Not anymore. Our neighbors don't throw trash on the ground. We put new bins everywhere. Everyone uses them, and now our street is very clean.

لم يعد الأمر كذلك. جيراننا لا يرمون القمامة على الأرض. وضعنا حاويات قمامة جديدة في كل مكان. الجميع يستخدمها، والآن أصبح شارعنا نظيفًا جدًا.



Mona

That's great!

هذا رائع!



The Present Simple Tense

زمن المضارع البسيط

Usage:

We use the present simple to talk about daily habits and routines.

نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن العادات اليومية والروتين.

Negative Form:

صيغة النفي:

(I/ We/ They/ You) + **don't (do not)** + (inf) المصدر

e.g. Cars **don't move** quickly in the morning.

(He/ She/ It) + **doesn't (does not)** + (inf) المصدر

e.g. She **doesn't need** to use cars every day.

Yes/No Question:

السؤال بـ (هل):

Question	Do	I/ you/ we/ they	...? الفعل في المصدر (inf.)
السؤال	Does	he/ she/ it	
Answer	Yes,	subject	do / does.
الإجابة	No,		don't / doesn't.

e.g. A: Do you **know** how to solve the problem? B: **Yes, I do.** / **No, I don't.**

e.g. A: Does your street **have** this problem? B: **Yes, it does.** / **No, it doesn't.**

✓ Checkpoint Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للقواعد اللغوية.

- I (**doesn't** – don't – isn't – aren't) take very long showers.
- She (**isn't** – don't – doesn't – haven't) come late to school.
- They (**don't** – doesn't – aren't – isn't) throw trash in the street.
- Do you (**has** – have – having – had) a car?
- (**Is** – Do – Does – Are) your dad drive to work?
- A: Do they help the community? B: Yes, (**I do** – they are – he does – they do).

Quick Practice on The Present Simple Tense

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 Adam (don't) clean the streets on Sundays.
- 2 Amira doesn't (collects) toys for children.
- 3 They (aren't) plant trees in winter.
- 4 The ducks don't (eating) bread.
- 5 Adam's sister (isn't) volunteer at the library.
- 6 We don't (threw) trash in the park.
- 7 The community center (don't) open at night.
- 8 My friends don't (feeding) street cats.
- 9 (Do) Adam clean the park every Saturday?
- 10 Do the supermarkets (using) eco-friendly bags?
- 11 Does Amira (visits) her grandparents every week?
- 12 (Does) you use your car every day?
- 13 Do students (cleans) their classrooms daily?
- 14 A: Does the city organize clean-up events? B: Yes, it (is).
- 15 A: Do children feed the fish in the lake? B: (Yes), they don't.

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1 his garden – bananas – grow – in – doesn't – Grandpa.
- 2 don't – The – recycle – students – paper.
- 3 help – her – She – doesn't – neighbors.
- 4 brother – your – Does – your neighbors – help?
- 5 take – the – school bus – The students – every day.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We don't need to cars every day.
a) help b) use c) throw d) discuss
- 2 Traffic around schools is a big in our community.
a) solution b) problem c) bin d) ground
- 3 When people throw trash on the ground, it dirty.
a) sees b) feels c) takes d) looks
- 4 Using school buses helps reduce the
a) traffic b) students c) teachers d) solutions
- 5 Our community has many
a) solutions b) trash c) problems d) neighbors
- 6 We can put everywhere, so people can use them to throw trash.
a) cars b) buses c) bins d) traffic
- 7 You can't throw trash on the
a) traffic b) problem c) ground d) solution
- 8 We need to the problem, so that we can find a solution. Super Question ?
a) leave b) discuss c) brush d) take

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

fix – clean – problems – solutions – traffic

My name is Leena. Today, I'm talking about our community. Our community has many (1)..... We need to discuss solutions to (2)..... them. The first problem is (3)..... We don't need to use cars every day. We can take the school bus instead. The second problem is the trash. We must keep our streets (4).....

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Ali and Mona are talking about community problems. Ali talks about morning traffic near schools. He suggests using school buses to reduce the number of cars. Mona talks about trash problems—some people don't use bins. Ali says his street has that problem, but they fixed it by putting bins everywhere. Now, the neighbors use them, and the street looks better. Both Mona and Ali like working together and finding simple solutions for the community problems.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Ali talks about morning traffic near
a) houses b) hospitals c) streets d) schools
- 2 The word "reduce" means making something than usual.
a) more b) less c) bigger d) heavier

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What are Ali and Mona doing?
.....
- 4 How did Ali and his neighbors fix the trash problem?
.....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 She (don't) like pollution. **SB**
- 2 Do they (takes) a taxi to school?
- 3 We (doesn't) need a car for everyday use.
- 4 He doesn't (using) a cell phone in the classroom.
- 5 (Do) he play sports on the weekend?
- 6 I (doesn't) walk to the park by myself.
- 7 They (doesn't) use trash bins. **SB**
- 8 (Does) you often take long showers?
- 9 We don't (swimming) in the lake.
- 10 My brother (don't) recycle paper at school. **Super Question ?**

5 Write a paragraph of about (18 - 24) words using the following guiding elements:

"Traffic problem near schools"

move – schools – bus





Lesson 3



Egypt: My Culture مصر: ثقافتى



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

the Delta	الدلتا	the north	الشمال	Upper Egypt	صعيد مصر
the south	الجنوب	traditions	تقاليد	Spring Festival	مهرجان الربيع
sugar cane harvest	حصاد قصب السكر	colorful carpets	سجاد ملون	traditional songs	أغاني شعبية
old stories	قصص قديمة	Nubia	النوبة	galabeyas	جلاليب / جلابيات
modern clothes	ملابس عصرية	traditional outfits	أزياء تقليدية	events	أحداث
turbans	عمائم	Egyptians	مصريون	culture	ثقافة

Extra vocabulary

special (adj.)	خاص	region	منطقة	decorations	زخارف
farmers	مزارعون	rice	أرز	cotton	قطن
factories	مصانع	crafts	مصنوعات يدوية	pottery	فخار
bright (adj.)	ساطع / لامع	designs	تصميمات	stylish (adj.)	أنيق

Expressions and Phrases

are known for	مشهورون بـ	by hand	يدويًا
even though	على الرغم من	have differences	لديهم اختلافات

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present

Past

Present

Past

celebrate يحتفل
weave يغزل
share يتشارك

celebrated
weaved
shared

work يعمل
paint يدهن
love يحب

worked
painted
loved

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

Past

Present

Past

grow يزرع
tell يخبر

grew
told

sing يغنى
wear يرتدى

sang
wore

Take care !

- لاحظ استخدام حرف الجر **in** قبل الاتجاهات الأربعة والمناطق.

e.g. - The Delta is **in** the north.

- **In** Upper Egypt, men wear galabeyas.



Warm up

Which part of Egypt are you from?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Egypt has two special **regions**⁽¹⁾: The Delta in the **north**⁽²⁾ and Upper Egypt in the **south**⁽³⁾. Each region has its traditions and culture.

In the Delta region, they **celebrate**⁽⁴⁾ the **Spring Festival**⁽⁵⁾ with colorful **decorations**⁽⁶⁾ and special foods. Farmers grow rice and cotton. Many people work in factories and make beautiful crafts. Women **are known for**⁽⁷⁾ making clothes. In Upper Egypt, life is different. People celebrate the **sugar cane harvest**⁽⁸⁾ with big festivals. They make pottery and **weave**⁽⁹⁾ colorful carpets by hand. Families sing **traditional**⁽¹⁰⁾ songs and tell old stories. In some places like Nubia, houses are painted in bright colors and have special **designs**⁽¹¹⁾.

In the Delta region, men wear galabeyas or **modern**⁽¹²⁾ clothes like pants and shirts. Women wear **stylish**⁽¹³⁾ dresses or traditional **outfits**⁽¹⁴⁾ for special events.

In Upper Egypt, men also wear galabeyas and sometimes **turbans**⁽¹⁵⁾. Women wear colorful dresses. Even though the two places have some differences, they share many of the same traditions. Egyptians are proud of their culture and love to celebrate it together.



- | | |
|------|----------------|
| (1) | مناطق |
| (2) | الشمال |
| (3) | الجنوب |
| (4) | يحتفل |
| (5) | مهرجان الربيع |
| (6) | زخارف |
| (7) | مشهور بـ |
| (8) | حصاد قصب السكر |
| (9) | يغزل |
| (10) | تقليدي |
| (11) | تصميمات |
| (12) | عصري |
| (13) | أنيق |
| (14) | أزياء |
| (15) | عمائم |

✓ Checkpoint

1 How many regions does Egypt have?

2 What do men wear in the Delta region?



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Egypt has two main regions: the Delta and Upper Egypt. مصر بها منطقتان رئيسيتان: الدلتا والصعيد.
- ✓ In the Delta, farmers grow rice and cotton. في الدلتا، يزرع الفلاحون الأرز والقطن.
- ✓ People in the Delta celebrate the Spring Festival. الناس في الدلتا يحتفلون بعيد الربيع.
- ✓ Most people in the Delta work in factories. معظم الناس في الدلتا يعملون في المصانع.
- ✓ Women in the Delta are known for making clothes. النساء في الدلتا مشهورات بصناعة الملابس.
- ✓ People in Upper Egypt celebrate the sugar cane harvest. يحتفل الناس في الصعيد بحصاد قصب السكر.
- ✓ Upper Egypt is known for pottery and colorful carpets. الصعيد مشهور بالفخار والسجاد الملون.
- ✓ Men wear galabeyas; or modern clothes like shirts and pants. الرجال يرتدون الجلابيب أو الملابس العصرية كالمقمصان والبنطال.
- ✓ Women wear colorful dresses. النساء يرتدين فساتين ملونة.
- ✓ Egyptians are proud of their culture. المصريون فخرون بثقافتهم.



Read and write T (True) of F (False): SB

- ① Upper Egypt is in the south. ()
- ② People grow sugar cane in the Delta. ()
- ③ Houses are painted in bright colors in Nubia. ()
- ④ Nobody makes crafts in the Delta region. ()

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The two regions of Egypt are
 - a) Cairo and Alexandria
 - b) Upper Egypt and the Delta
 - c) the desert and the Nile
 - d) the Red Sea and the Mediterranean Sea
- 2 People in Upper Egypt celebrate
 - a) the Spring Festival
 - b) the sugar cane harvest
 - c) the cotton harvest
 - d) the rice festival
- 3 The houses in Nubia
 - a) are made of glass
 - b) have special designs
 - c) are very tall
 - d) are built underwater
- 4 Egyptians are proud of their, and they love to celebrate it together.
 - a) culture
 - b) songs
 - c) carpets
 - d) factories



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:

Ff /f/

The /f/ sound is voiceless. Your throat doesn't vibrate, like in "fish".

صوت /f/ هو صوت مهموس. حلقك لا يهتز عند نطقه، مثل في كلمة "fish".



factory

مصنع



forest

غابة



frog

ضفدع



flag

علم

Vv /v/

The /v/ sound is voiced. Your throat vibrates, like in "van".

صوت /v/ هو صوت اهتزازي. حلقك يهتز عند نطقه، مثل في كلمة "van".



van

شاحنة



vest

سترة



violin

كمان



view

منظر

✓ Checkpoint Read and sort the words:

forest – violin – flag – vest

/f/	/v/
.....	
.....	

Prefix البادئة

A prefix is a small group of letters added to the beginning of a word to change its meaning.

البادئة هي مجموعة حروف تضاف في بداية الكلمة وتغير معناها.

e.g.

dis = not



like

يحب

dislike

لا يحب

il = not



legal

قانوني

illegal

غير قانوني

ir = not



regular

منتظم

irregular

غير منتظم

Word	الكلمة	Opposite	الكلمة
appear	يظهر	disappear	يختفي
honest	أمين	dishonest	غير أمين
logical	منطقي	illogical	غير منطقي
relevant	متعلق بـ	irrelevant	غير متعلق بـ
responsible	مسئول	irresponsible	غير مسئول

✓ Checkpoint Write the opposite word:

Word	Opposite
like	illogical
	irrelevant

✍ Read and complete the sentences using the opposite (prefixes):

- The sun (appears) at night.
- Eating sand is (logical).
- Bees are insects. They are (relevant) to birds.
- She doesn't tell the truth. She is (honest).



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- 1 Egypt has main regions.
a) one b) two c) three d) four
- 2 The Delta is in the
a) east b) west c) north d) south
- 3 Egypt celebrates the sugar cane harvest.
a) North b) Higher c) Middle d) Upper
- 4 Both regions love
a) colors b) traditions c) festivals d) sugar cane

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 What Omar says is It doesn't make sense.
a) illogical b) appear c) dishonest d) dislike
- 2 Upper Egypt is in the
a) south b) north c) Delta d) east
- 3 are traditional outfits in Egypt.
a) Pants b) Shorts c) Galabeyas d) Vests
- 4 People in Egypt can colorful carpets.
a) celebrate b) sing c) weave d) wear
- 5 Different regions in Egypt share many
a) flags b) carpets c) traditions d) factories

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

Spring – Nubia – regions – old – proud

In Egypt, the Delta and Upper Egypt have different cultures. Delta people enjoy the (1)..... Festival, farming, and crafts. Upper Egypt has big harvest festivals and colorful homes in (2)..... Families sing and tell (3)..... stories. Though different, they share traditions. Egyptians are (4)..... of their culture and celebrate it together.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Northern Egypt has the Delta with rice fields and factories. People wear modern clothes or traditional galabeyas. Southern Upper Egypt has sugar cane farms and handmade carpets. Nubian villages have bright blue houses. Both regions share holidays and delicious food. Egyptians work hard, but always make time for family and celebrations. Their culture is old, but still strong today. Egyptians are always proud of their culture and traditions.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Upper Egypt is in the part of Egypt.
 a) northern b) southern c) eastern d) middle
- 2 Egypt's culture is
 a) new b) modern c) small d) old

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What do the Nubian villages have?

- 4 What do both regions share?

5 Read and complete the sentences using the opposite (prefixes) of the given words: **SB**

- 1 It is to drive here. (legal)
- 2 He loud noise. (like)
- 3 The verb "see" has an past form. (regular)
- 4 The students are Their classroom is very dirty. (responsible)
- 5 Your essay is to the topic. (relevant)

6 Punctuate the following:

- 1 egypt has two special regions

- 2 The delta is in the north



Lessons 4 and 5



Writing



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

diary	مذكرة	history	تاريخ
neighborhood	الحي	train station	محطة القطار
photos	صور فوتوغرافية	rich (adj.)	غني / ملء بـ

Extra vocabulary

amazing (adj.)	مدهش	wooden (adj.)	خشي
stalls	أكشاك	fresh (adj.)	طازج
building	مبنى	safely	بأمان

Expressions and Phrases

Dear diary	مذكراتي العزيزة	weren't here then	لم تكن هناك آنذاك
many years ago	منذ سنوات عديدة	Yours truly	المخلص لكم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
play يلعب	played	walk يمشي	walked
cycle يركب الدراجة	cycled	end ينهي	ended

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
sell يبيع	sold	see يرى	saw
show يوضح	showed	build يبني	built
stand يبقى	stood	keep يحافظ على	kept

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.



Warm up

What stories do old buildings tell us?

March 15, 2025

Dear diary ⁽¹⁾.

Today, Grandpa told me amazing stories about our community's **history**⁽²⁾. Fifty years ago, our **neighborhood**⁽³⁾ was very different! Where our big supermarket stands now, there was a beautiful old market with wooden **stalls**⁽⁴⁾. People sold fresh fruits and vegetables every morning. The tall **buildings**⁽⁵⁾ weren't here then. Instead, there were small houses with beautiful gardens. Everyone knew their neighbors, and children played **safely**⁽⁶⁾ in the streets. There was even a small train station where our park is now!



- (1) مذكراتي العزيزة
(2) تاريخ
(3) الحي
(4) أكشاك
(5) مباني
(6) بأمان
(7) المخلصة لكم

Grandpa showed me old photos. I saw the old school that still stands today. He said people helped to build it together many years ago. It makes me proud to know our community has such a rich history.

Yours truly⁽⁷⁾,
Hana

✓ **Checkpoint** What did Hana see in the old photos?

The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Grandpa told me amazing stories about our community's history.
جدي أخبرني بقصص مذهلة عن تاريخ مجتمعتنا.
- ✓ There was an old market with wooden stalls fifty years ago.
كان هناك سوق قديم بأكشاك خشبية قبل خمسين عامًا.
- ✓ There were small houses with amazing gardens.
كانت هناك بيوت صغيرة بحدائق رائعة.
- ✓ Children could play safely in the streets.
كان الأطفال يستطيعون اللعب بأمان في الشوارع.
- ✓ Our park today was an old train station.
حديثتنا اليوم كانت محطة قطار قديمة.
- ✓ My old school still stands today.
مدرستي القديمة لا تزال موجودة حتى اليوم.
- ✓ I'm proud of my community's rich history.
أنا فخورة بتاريخ مجتمعي الغني بالتاريخ.

How to write a diary entry كيفية كتابة المذكرات

1 Start with the date: ابدأ بالتاريخ:

Write the date at the top of your page.

اكتب التاريخ في أعلى الصفحة.

2 Write a greeting: اكتب التحية:

The greeting can be "Dear diary," or "Hello diary".

يمكن أن تكون التحية مثل: «مذكراتي العزيزة» أو «اهلا مذكرتي».

3 Add details: أضف التفاصيل:

Who you talked to, what you heard, and how you felt.

مع من تحدثت، ماذا سمعت، بما شعرت.

4 End with a closing: اختتم بكلمة ختامية:

Finish your diary with "Yours truly, and your name".

اختتم مذكرتك بعبارة مثل: «المخلص لكم، واسمك».

e.g. Write a diary entry about your community's history.

April 3rd, 2025

Dear diary,

Today, I learned many amazing things about my community's past. Grandpa shared stories from thirty years ago. I found out that life was very different back then. People lived a simple life. Many places have changed. There were no tall buildings. I feel proud to be part of a community with such a rich and kind history.

Yours truly,

Ola

Practice



Lessons 4 and 5

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



1 Grandpa told me amazing things about the history of my

- a) village b) town c) city d) party

2 played safely outside.

- a) Kids b) Children c) People d) Friends

3 The old train station is now our

- a) hospital b) park c) shopping mall d) house

4 Our school was built by members.

- a) school b) club c) community d) history

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 People fresh fruits and vegetables every morning.

- a) sold b) stood c) walked d) cycled

2 In the past there weren't big supermarkets, there were wooden

- a) stations b) schools c) stalls d) malls

3 Many years ago, children played safely in the

- a) factory b) supermarket c) streets d) mall

4 Events that happened in the past are our

- a) diary b) neighborhoods c) festivals d) history

5 It makes me to know our community rich history.

- a) tired b) angry c) sad d) proud

6 Grandpa showed us old of the neighborhood.

- a) stories b) years c) photos d) solutions

Super Question ?

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

knew – neighborhood – stories – modern – old

My name is Lara, I visited my grandpa two days ago. He told me amazing (1)..... about our community. Our (2)..... was very different! Where our big supermarket stands now, there was a beautiful (3)..... market with wooden stalls. People sold fresh fruits and vegetables every morning. People were very helpful, and everyone (4)..... their neighbors. Life was truly amazing.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Fifty years ago, our neighborhood looked really different! Small houses with gardens stood where tall buildings are now. A small market sold fresh food daily. Children could play safely in the streets, and everyone knew their neighbors. The old train station became today's park. Our community built the school together—it still stands today! Old photos show how much has changed. Though we have modern places now, we still share our community's traditions. We should remember our history while building our future.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The main idea of the text is in the past.
a) our school b) our neighborhood c) public gardens d) our market
- 2 The old became today's park.
a) supermarket b) hospital c) train station d) school

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What could children do in the past?
- 4 Summarize the text in two sentences.

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 our street was very different
- 2 plant trees in your community

6 Write a paragraph of about (18 - 24) words using the following guiding elements:

"Our village in the past"

ago – different – stalls

Unit 2

REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

collect	يجمع	plant	يزرع
clean	ينظف	help	يساعد
feed	يطعم	volunteer	يتطوع / متطوع
streets	شوارع	bottles	زجاجات
trash	قمامة	neighbors	جيران
community park	حديقة مجتمعية	clothes	ملابس

Lesson (2)

community	مجتمع	fewer cars	عدد أقل من السيارات
bins	صناديق قمامة	ground	الأرض
problem	مشكلة	solutions	حلول
specially	خاصة	traffic	ازدحام مروري
quickly	بسرعة	instead	بدلاً
road	طريق	everywhere	في كل مكان

Lesson (3)

The Delta	الدلتا	north	الشمال
Upper Egypt	صعيد مصر	south	الجنوب
traditions	تقاليد	Spring Festival	مهرجان الربيع
sugar cane harvest	حصاد قصب السكر	colorful carpets	سجاد ملون
pottery	الفخار	crafts	مصنوعات يدوية
Nubia	النوبة	events	أحداث
turbans	عمائم	culture	ثقافة

Lessons (4 and 5)

diary	مذكرة	history	تاريخ
neighborhood	الحي	photos	صور فوتوغرافية
train station	محطة القطار	rich	غني / مليء بـ
amazing	مدهش	wooden	خشبي
stalls	أكشاك	fresh	طازج
building	مبنى	safely	بأمان

Language in use

The Present Simple Tense

Negative Form:

صيغة النفي:

I/ We/ They/ You) + **don't** + (inf) ... الفعل في المصدر

e.g. Cars **don't move** quickly in the morning.

(He/ She/ It) + **doesn't** + (inf) ... الفعل في المصدر

e.g. She **doesn't need** to use cars every day.

Yes/No Question:

السؤال بـ (هل):

Question	السؤال	Do Does	I/ you/ we/ they he/ she/ it	... الفعل في المصدر (inf.)
Answer	الإجابة	Yes, No,	subject	do / does. don't / doesn't.

e.g. A: Do you know how to solve the problem?

B: Yes, I do. / No, I don't.

e.g. A: Does your street have this problem?

B: Yes, it does. / No, it doesn't.

Unit 2

CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

collect
clean
feed
streets
trash
community park

الكلمة بالعربية

الكلمة بالإنجليزية

يزرع
يساعد
يتطوع
زجاجات
جيرار
ملابس

Lesson 2

community
bins
problem
quickly
road

عدد أقل من السيارات
الأرض
حلول
مرور
بدلاً من

Lesson 3

the Delta
Upper Egypt
traditions
sugar cane harvest
Nubia
turbans

الشمال
الجنوب
مهرجان الربيع
سجاد ملون
أحداث
ثقافة

Lessons 4 and 5

diary
neighborhood
train station
amazing
stalls
building

تاريخ
صور
غنى / مليء بـ
خشبي
طازج
بأمان

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس مدى حفظ الطالب لتصرفات الأفعال.

Present

Past

Present

Past

volunteer

gave

fix

needed

talked

leave

solved

reduce

painted

celebrate

weaved

sing

showed

wear

shared

cycle



لكي تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about helping in the community:

- o We like to help in our community.
- o I + وقت معين + فعل من أفعال المساعدة في المجتمع + .
- o My friend / family member + فعل من أفعال المساعدة في المجتمع + .
- o We help our community because + سبب مساعدتك للمجتمع + .

"Helping in the community"

We like to help in our community. I clean trash from the streets with my friends on Saturdays. My sister collects clothes and gives them to people who need them. We help our community because it makes it a nicer place to live in.

How to write a diary entry about your town's history:

- o Start with the date. ابدأ بالتاريخ.
- o Write a greeting like (Dear diary). اكتب تحية مثل (مذكراتي العزيزة).
- o Add details about your town in the past. أضيف تفاصيل عن بلدتك في الماضي.
- o End with a closing like (Yours truly). اختتم بجملته ختامية مثل (المخلص لكم).

"Diary entry about your town's history"

June 15th 2025

Dear Diary,

Today, my grandpa showed me pictures of my town 50 years ago. Things were different then. There were no tall buildings. Our school was an old train station. Children played safely in the street.

Yours truly,

Eman

1 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box:

plant – feed – collect – help – clean – volunteer

- 1 We to help in the park.
- 2 We the streets and bottles.
- 3 We flowers and trees.
- 4 We the ducks.
- 5 It is fun to and make the park nice for everyone.

2 Look and rewrite the following sentences in negative and question forms:



- 1 We need to use cars every day. (Negative)

.....



- 2 Yes, they take the bus to school. (Question)

.....

3 Read and correct the mistake:

- 1 She don't like pollution. (.....)
- 2 They doesn't use trash bins. (.....)
- 3 Do he take the bus to school? (.....)
- 4 Does cars move quickly in the morning? (.....)



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

4

- 1 Upper Egypt is in the
a) south b) north c) east d) sea
- 2 In, they celebrate the Spring Festival.
a) Delta b) Upper Egypt c) Alexandria d) Tanta
- 3 Farmers grow and cotton.
a) wheat b) fruits c) rice d) grapes
- 4 Many people work in
a) factories b) buildings c) fields d) offices



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 My country has a rich
a) traffic b) station c) photos d) history
- 2 I didn't drink tea. I drank water
a) though b) instead c) ago d) years

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

bins – community – problems – together – save

Solving community (1)..... like traffic and trash needs teamwork. Simple solutions, like using school buses instead of cars and using (2)..... for trash can have a big effect. When neighbors work (3)....., good changes happen faster. Sharing ideas and solutions makes the (4)..... better. Let's continue helping the community to create a cleaner, safer, and better environment for everyone!

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

5

Moaz and Habiba are cousins. They live in the same neighborhood. Last month, their street had a big problem. People threw trash on the ground, and the street looked dirty. Moaz and Habiba discussed the problem so that they could find a solution. They put trash bins everywhere, so people started using them. They volunteered to collect the trash at the weekend. Now, the street looks clean and nice. Moaz and Habiba were happy to help.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Moaz and Habiba live in the same
a) house b) apartment c) neighborhood d) country
- 2 They put everywhere so people started using them.
a) soda cans b) letter boxes c) games and toys d) trash bins

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What was the problem with Moaz and Habiba's street?
- 4 How does the street look now?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

- 1 Cars (doesn't) move fast in the morning.
- 2 Some people (doesn't) use trash bins.
- 3 The school bus (don't) come late.
- 4 The problem (don't) fix itself.

6 Punctuate the following:

2

we clean the park on fridays.

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18 - 24) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"We help our community"
plant trees – clean trash – feed animals





Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

4

- 1 Adam helps his community every
a) Monday b) Saturday c) Friday d) Sunday
- 2 He collects from the streets with his friends.
a) trash b) clothes c) money d) papers
- 3 This makes the streets look clean and
a) dirty b) worse c) nice d) long
- 4 Adam feels when he helps.
a) traditional b) sad c) worried d) happy



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 happens when there are too many cars on the road.
a) Solution b) Trash c) Traffic d) Community
- 2 Who can help by the dogs and cats?
a) planting b) feeding c) collecting d) volunteering

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

school – cars – plant – fix – problems

Traffic is slow near schools in the morning. There are too many (1).....! But we can change this. If more kids take the (2)..... bus, fewer cars will be on the road. This makes traffic better. Parents save time, and the air stays clean. Let's all try the bus! Small steps help solve big (3)..... . Share the idea with friends. Together, we can (4)..... this!

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

5

In Upper Egypt, life is different. People celebrate the sugar cane harvest with big festivals. They make **pottery** and weave colorful carpets by hand. Families sing traditional songs and tell old stories. In some places like Nubia, houses are painted in bright colors and have special designs. Men wear galabeyas and sometimes turbans. Women wear colorful dresses. Egyptians are proud of their culture and love to celebrate it together!

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about
 a) the Delta b) turbans c) Upper Egypt d) festivals
- 2 "Pottery" is usually made of
 a) wood b) iron c) plastic d) mud

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What do people celebrate in Upper Egypt?
- 4 What do men wear in Upper Egypt?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

- 1 I (doesn't) feed the dogs on Monday.
- 2 Does Hadeer (helped) in the community?
- 3 She (don't) eat ice-cream.
- 4 (Does) they travel by plane?

6 Punctuate the following:

2

there are two main regions in egypt.

7 Write a paragraph of about (18 - 24) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"My village in the past"
 old photos – tall buildings – rich history





A) Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

- 1 Let's end (water – air – river) pollution.
- 2 Walk or cycle to (home – school – the park).
- 3 Keep your (house – community – street) clean.

4.5

B) Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

do – community – trash – plant

Ola : What do you do to help the ?

Omar : I clean every Saturday.

Ola : Do you trees?

Omar : Yes, I They make the park beautiful.

6

C) Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

7.5

Amira helps people who need help. She collects clothes and gives them to others. This is a simple way to help. Many people need clothes to keep them warm in winter. Sharing makes the community stronger. Adam and his sister also help in different ways. When everyone helps, life gets better for all. Everyone can help. Let's all do our part to make our community great!

A Answer the following questions:

- 1 What is Amira's way of helping the community?
- 2 How does sharing help the community?

.....

.....

B Choose the correct answer:

- 3 Many people need (meals – money – clothes) to keep them warm.
- 4 Adam and his (mother – cousin – sister) help in different ways.
- 5 When everyone helps, life gets (worse – bad – better).

D) Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 Let's (fix – volunteer – feed) at the community park.
- 2 All my neighbors worked together to (plant – volunteer – solve) the problem.
- 3 The galabeya is a traditional (oufit – region – festival) in Egypt.
- 4 (Does – Do – Is) Samir go to bed early?
- 5 Manar and Ola (doesn't – don't – isn't) eat unhealthy food.

5

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

5

- 1 in the – Everyone – uses – neighborhood – bins – trash.

.....

- 2 volunteers – My cousin – at the – park – community.

.....

- 3 is in – The – Delta – north – the – of Egypt.

.....

- 4 know – Do – you – how to – this – solve – problem?

.....

- 5 doesn't – She – to use – need – cars – every day.

.....

Unit 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 How do our help us smell, taste, and hear?
a) arms b) hands c) schools d) senses
- 2 Senses help us the world around us.
a) smoke b) understand c) use d) stay
- 3 Amany for nine hours every night.
a) goes b) grows c) drinks d) sleeps
- 4 Who does Sarah help the afternoon?
a) in b) on c) at d) for
- 5 What's your healthy?
a) homework b) habit c) sleep d) school
- 6 Goha took out a few from his pocket.
a) coins b) soups c) windows d) restaurants
- 7 Someone who always wants more than what is needed is
a) hungry b) tired c) greedy d) hot
- 8 I use my hands to things.
a) taste b) touch c) see d) hear
- 9 Goha enjoyed the smell of soup.
a) greedy b) delicious c) hungry d) jingling
- 10 During break time, I eat a healthy and drink water.
a) habit b) teeth c) shower d) snack

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A

routine – lunch – healthy – wakes – washes

Having a daily routine is important. Shahd (1)..... up at 6:00 a.m. She brushes her teeth and eats a (2)..... breakfast. She goes to school early. After school she has (3)..... at home. In the evening, she eats dinner and goes to bed at 9:00 p.m. This (4)..... helps her stay strong and healthy.

B

hear – see – smell – senses – touch

Our senses help us understand the world around us. We have five main (1)..... sight, hearing, smell, taste, and touch. Our eyes help us (2)..... . Our ears help us (3)..... sounds. We use our nose to smell and our tongue to taste. We use our hands to (4)..... things.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 Every day, she (walk) to school with her brother.
- 2 Salma (watching) a fun movie every week.
- 3 On Saturday, I (spends) time with my cousins.
- 4 Children (drinks) a lot of water after they exercise.
- 5 Anas (brush) his teeth in the morning.
- 6 Habiba (wake) up late every Friday.
- 7 My sister (do) some simple exercises in the garden.
- 8 Hana (ate) lots of vegetables and fruits at home.
- 9 I (has) my breakfast at school.
- 10 My father (be) in France for a holiday.

4 Punctuate the following:

- 1 that's a great question
.....
- 2 how do our senses help us stay safe
.....
- 3 we'll learn about our amazing senses
.....

Unit 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 When we all help, we our community great.
a) collect b) take c) do d) make
- 2 You should walk to school to be
a) healthy b) hungry c) quickly d) bad
- 3 My uncle sold fresh every morning.
a) buildings b) fruits c) stories d) gardens
- 4 My grandpa showed me his old He looked very young!
a) photos b) questions c) flags d) vans
- 5 Go to the train if you want to travel to Alexandria.
a) stop b) station c) stall d) street
- 6 We add the prefix "....." to get the opposite of "honest".
a) il- b) ir- c) dis- d) un-
- 7 Egyptians are proud their culture.
a) for b) on c) of d) at
- 8 In the Delta, people the Spring Festival.
a) taste b) celebrate c) sing d) share

- 9 Ali's street has new We put trash in them now.
 a) desks b) flowers c) cars d) bins
- 10 Let's make our park! Let's collect the trash.
 a) clean b) healthy c) dirty d) hot

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A old – photos – safely – history – houses

Life was different in the past. There were small (1)....., gardens, and markets. Children played (2)....., and neighbors knew each other well. The (3)..... school that I went to is still there. It was built by the community. I feel proud of my community's rich (4)..... .

B community – clothes – feel – streets – touch

Amira and Adam want to help their community. Adam cleans (1)..... and feeds animals. Amira gives (2)..... to people in need. They all (3)..... happy when they share their things. Amira and Adam think helping and sharing makes the (4)..... better.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 Where (do) your grandfather live?
- 2 (Are) you speak English well?
- 3 Ali (don't) play football after school.
- 4 Does he (gets) up early?
- 5 How much (do) Sameh weigh?
- 6 (Is) Mai like feeding the chickens?
- 7 Saleh doesn't (plays) tennis.
- 8 Does Sama (has) a blue dress?
- 9 I (doesn't) listen to pop music.
- 10 How often (does) you do a sport?

4 Punctuate the following:

1 egypt has two special regions

2 upper Egypt is in the south

3 what do you do to help our community

Model 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 I hear music with my
 a) ears b) tongue c) eyes d) nose
- 2 Salma drinks of water at school.
 a) plants b) healthy c) hungry d) plenty
- 3 A/An is someone who has something.
 a) character b) shower c) owner d) other
- 4 What do you do to help your?
 a) community b) garden c) solution d) problem
- 5 Yesterday, we cleaned the streets and bottles.
 a) planted b) volunteered c) collected d) fed

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

soup – restaurant – smelling – greedy – touching

Goha was hungry but he had no money. He enjoyed the smell of soup outside a (1)..... . The (2)..... owner asked him to pay for (3)..... his food. Goha cleverly offered the sound of his coins instead. The owner laughed and invited Goha to share the (4)....., saying "Good food tastes better when shared with others!"

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 My parents (watches) TV in the afternoon.
- 2 What (does) your friends do on Saturdays?
- 3 (Is) your sister help at home?
- 4 Ali's street (have) new bins. Everyone uses them now.
- 5 Salma (carry) her backpack every day.

Model 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We can with our hands.
a) hear b) smell c) taste d) touch
- 2 Healthy foods give us for the day.
a) habit b) water c) energy d) mind
- 3 happens because there are many cars on the road.
a) Ground b) Culture c) Traffic d) Trash
- 4 Goha was hungry, but he didn't have enough to buy food.
a) news b) money c) clothes d) friends
- 5 Sarah's healthy habits help her good.
a) go b) feel c) take d) drink

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

factory – sugar – traditions – celebrates – colorful

Egypt has two regions: the Delta and Upper Egypt. The Delta (1)..... spring
with decorations, farming, and crafts. Upper Egypt celebrates the (2).....
cane harvest, makes pottery, weaves carpets, and paints (3)..... houses.
Each region has its own (4)....., songs, stories, and cultural celebrations.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 My brother (study) English every night.
- 2 Cars (doesn't) move quickly in the morning.
- 3 Samah takes a shower and (brush) her teeth.
- 4 My sister and I (sleeps) late every night.
- 5 Amira (take) vitamins every morning.



1 Read and complete the dialogue:

senses – smell – understand – safe

Mr. Mesbah: Good morning, Sami. How are you?

Sami : I'm fine, Mr. Mesbah. What is our lesson about today?

Mr. Mesbah: Today, we'll learn about our (1)..... .

Sami : How do our senses help us?

Mr. Mesbah: Senses help us (2)..... the world around us.

Sami : That's great. How do our senses help us stay (3).....?

Mr. Mesbah: Well, for example, if we (4)..... smoke, we know there's a fire.

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 Omnia (eats – makes – helps) her mother in the kitchen.
- 2 In the afternoon, Sarah (feels – drinks – does) her homework.
- 3 (Does – Is – Do) you drive your car every day?
- 4 The two (deserts – regions – rivers) of Egypt are Upper Egypt and the Delta.
- 5 The weather is (irregular – like – regular) today. It's very windy and hot.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 your – a car – Does – mother – have?

.....

2 sister – every day – My – mother – our – helps.

.....

3 nose – smell – our – We – with.

.....

4 proud – country – Egyptians – of – are – their.

.....

5 senses – do – have – How many – we?

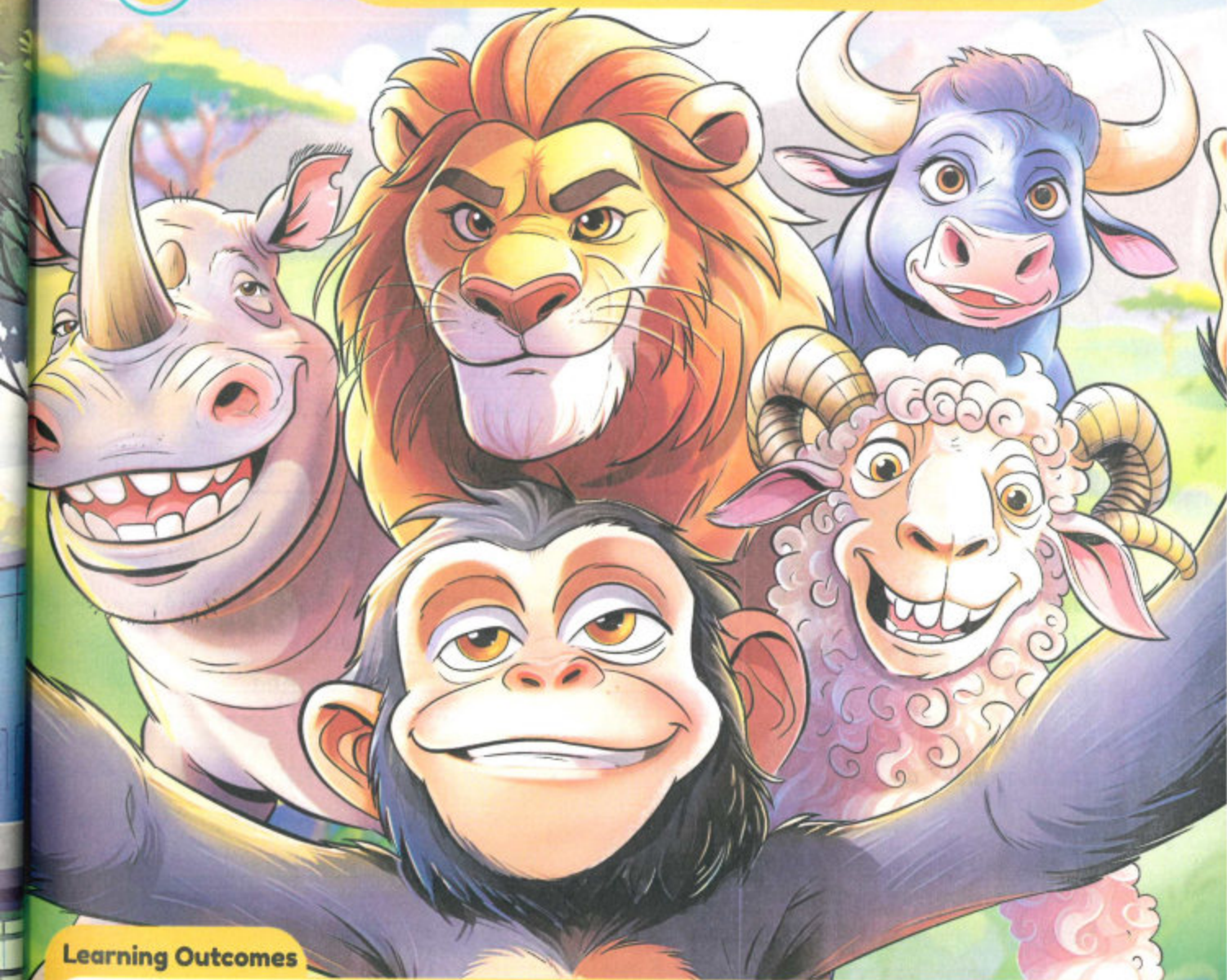
.....



MODULE 2

Unit 3 : Animals in Our World

Unit 4 : Egypt My Homeland



Learning Outcomes

● By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

Speaking:

- describe animals and their daily habits.
- use comparative adjectives to compare different animals.

Listening:

- understand basic conversations about animals.
- discriminate between the consonant blends /fr/ /dr/ /pl/.

Reading:

- identify animals' habits in a simple text.
- identify a short story with a moral lesson to get the main idea.
- discuss the moral lessons in a short story.

Writing:

- draft a basic report about endangered animals.
- plan a research project about a forest animal.

● بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون الطالب قادرًا على أن:

- يصف الحيوانات وعاداتها اليومية.
- يستخدم صفات المقارنة لمقارنة الحيوانات المختلفة.

- يفهم المحادثات الأساسية حول الحيوانات.
- يميز بين دمج الأصوات الساكنة /fr/ /dr/ /pl/.

- يتعرف على عادات الحيوانات في نص بسيط.
- يحدد قصة قصيرة ذات درس أخلاقي لفهم الفكرة الرئيسية.
- يناقش الدروس الأخلاقية في قصة قصيرة.

- يكتب تقريرًا بسيطًا عن الحيوانات المهددة بالانقراض.
- يخطط لمشروع بحثي حول حيوان من الغابة.

Study



Lesson 1

Let's Meet the Animals!

هيا نقابل الحيوانات



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:

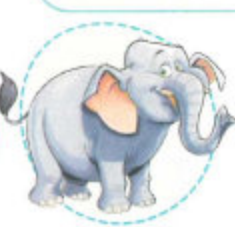
Main vocabulary



lion
أسد



monkey
قرد



elephant
فيل



bear
دب



zebra
حمار وحشي



giraffe
زرافة

Extra vocabulary

trunk	خرطوم
coat	معطف (فرو الحيوانات)
fur	فرو
claws	مخالب
TV program	برنامج تلفزيوني
neck	رقبة

tail	ذيل
spotted (adj.)	منقط
thick (adj.)	كثيف
forest park	منتزه غابي
amazing (adj.)	مذهل
king	ملك

striped (adj.)	مخطط
leaves	أوراق الشجر
sharp (adj.)	حاد
forest guide	مرشد سياحي في الغابة
animals	حيوانات
jungle land	أرض الغابة

Expressions and Phrases

run in groups	يجري في مجموعات
work as ...	يعمل كـ (الوظيفة) ...
as well	أيضًا
Sure!	بالتأكيد!

at night	أثناء الليل
lots of	كثيرًا من
during the day	أثناء النهار
see (something) up close	يرى (شيئًا ما) عن قرب

catch fish	يصطاد السمك
That's interesting!	هذا ممتع!
That's right!	هذا صحيح!
from up high	من الأعلى

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
use	used	spray	sprayed
climb	climbed	hunt	hunted

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
run	ran	eat	ate
catch	caught	drink	drank
know	knew	see	saw

A Day at the Forest Park يوم في المنتزه الغابي



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:

Omar and Nadia are talking about animals at the forest park.

يتحدث عمر ونادية عن الحيوانات في المنتزه الغابي.



Omar

Hi, Nadia! What does your dad do at the forest park?

أهلاً نادية! ماذا يفعل والدك في المنتزه الغابي؟

He works as a forest guide. He shows visitors the animals.

يعمل مرشدًا سياحيًا في الغابة. يُري الزوار الحيوانات.



Nadia



Omar

Do you usually go with him?

هل تذهبن معه عادةً؟

Sometimes.

أحيانًا.



Nadia



Omar

What animals do visitors see?

ما الحيوانات التي يراها الزوار؟

Lots of them! They see elephants drinking water and monkeys climbing trees.

الكثير منها! يرون فيلة تشرب الماء وقروودًا تتسلق الأشجار.



Nadia



Omar

That's interesting! Do they see lions, too?

هذا مثير للاهتمام! هل يرون أسودًا أيضًا؟

Yes, and giraffes as well.

نعم، والزرافات أيضًا.



Nadia



Omar

Lions often hunt at night and sleep during the day. Giraffes eat leaves from tall trees.

غالبًا ما تصطاد الأسود ليلاً وتنام نهارًا. الزرافات تأكل أوراق الأشجار العالية.

That's right! How do you know all of this?

هذا صحيح! كيف عرفت كل هذا؟



Nadia



Omar

I watch a TV program about animals.

أشاهد برنامجًا تلفزيونيًا عن الحيوانات.

Would you like to visit the forest park?

هل ترغب بزيارة المنتزه الغابي؟



Nadia



Omar

Sure! It must be amazing to see all those animals up close.

بالتأكيد! لا بد أن رؤية كل هذه الحيوانات عن قرب أمر مذهل.



Read again and answer: **SB**

- 1 What does Nadia's dad do at the forest park?
.....
- 2 When do lions often hunt?
.....
- 3 What do giraffes eat?
.....
- 4 Does Nadia always go with her dad to the forest?
.....

Definitions

The giraffe	It has a spotted coat. It eats leaves from tall trees. It has a long neck. لها فرو منقط، وتأكل أوراق الأشجار العالية. لديها رقبة طويلة.
The bear	It has thick fur and sharp claws. It catches fish. له فرو كثيف ومخالبه حادة، ويصطاد الأسماك.
The monkey	It is small and has a long tail. It climbs trees. إنه صغير وذو ذيل طويل، ويتسلق الأشجار.
The zebra	It has a striped coat. It runs in groups. له فرو مخطط، يركض في مجموعات.
The lion	It has yellow fur. It hunts animals at night. It is the king of the jungle land. له فرو أصفر، ويصطاد الحيوانات ليلاً. إنه ملك أرض الغابة.
The elephant	It is big and gray. It uses its trunk to spray water on its body. إنه كبير ورمادي اللون. يستخدم خرطومته لرش الماء على جسمه.



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Nadia's dad works as a forest guide. يعمل والد نادية مرشدًا سياحيًا في الغابة.
- ✓ He shows visitors the animals. يُري الزوار الحيوانات.
- ✓ Visitors see elephants drinking water and monkeys climbing trees. يرى الزوار فيلة تشرب الماء، وقردة تتسلق الأشجار.
- ✓ They also see lions and giraffes. كما يرون أسودًا وزرافات.
- ✓ Lions often hunt at night and sleep during the day. غالبًا ما تصطاد الأسود ليلاً وتنام نهارًا.
- ✓ Giraffes eat leaves from tall trees. تأكل الزرافات أوراق الأشجار العالية.

✓ Checkpoint Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للمفردات اللغوية. 🌟

- 1 The (vet – forest guide – nurse – teacher) shows visitors the animals.
- 2 The monkey has a (sharp – long – hot – cold) tail.
- 3 Lions use their (legs – ears – eyes – claws) to hunt.
- 4 The elephant uses its (feet – trunk – eyes – hands) to spray water on its body.
- 5 The (zebra – giraffe – bear – monkey) eats leaves from tall trees.
- 6 Many animals live in the (school – garden – forest park – street).

Practice



Lesson 1

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- 1 I know a lot about giraffes because I watch a TV program about
 a) people b) places c) animals d) colors
- 2 The monkey climbs
 a) desks b) trees c) walls d) rivers
- 3 The zebra in groups.
 a) runs b) drinks c) catches d) climbs
- 4 The bear catches
 a) giraffes b) birds c) monkeys d) fish

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We met a friendly at the park. He knows a lot about animals.
 a) forest guide b) teacher c) engineer d) nurse
- 2 My mom bought a coat. It had brown and white spots.
 a) sharp b) spotted c) thick d) striped
- 3 The is the king of the jungle land.
 a) bear b) zebra c) lion d) elephant
- 4 She water on the plants in her balcony.
 a) eats b) shows c) catches d) sprays
- 5 The zebra has a coat.
 a) spotted b) striped c) long d) short
- 6 The eats leaves from trees up high. Super Question ?
 a) lion b) monkey c) giraffe d) fox

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

animals – forest – hunt – drinking – night

Omar and Nadia know a lot about animals. Nadia's father is a (1)..... guide. He shows visitors (2)..... like elephants, monkeys, lions, and giraffes. Visitors see elephants (3)..... water and monkeys climbing trees. They also see lions and giraffes. Lions (4)..... at night and giraffes eat leaves. Omar likes to watch TV programs about animals and he would love to visit the forest park.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

My uncle Ahmed is a forest guide. He works in the forest park. He sees lots of animals there. The giraffe has a spotted coat. It eats leaves from tall trees. The bear has thick fur and sharp claws. It catches fish. The monkey is small and has a long tail. It climbs trees. The zebra has a striped coat. It runs in groups. The lion has yellow fur. It hunts animals at night. The elephant is big and gray. It uses its trunk to spray water on its body.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The general idea of the text is about
a) forest park b) school c) restaurant d) club
- The lion hunts animals
a) in the morning b) in the afternoon c) in the evening d) at night

B Answer the following questions:

- Where does uncle Ahmed work?
- Why is the elephant's trunk important?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 drinks – water – The elephant – of – lots.

2 about – I – animals – watch – TV program – a.

3 visitors – do – What animals – see?

4 at – hunts – The lion – night – animals. 

6 Punctuate the following:

1 do you usually go with him

2 the zebra runs in groups



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:



Taking Care of Animals رعاية الحيوانات

Main vocabulary

vets	أطباء بيطريون	the wild	الحياة البرية	care	عناية
zoo animals	حيوانات حديقة الحيوان	attention	اهتمام / رعاية	challenges	تحديات / صعوبات
forest officers	حراس الغابة	owners	الملاك (أصحاب الشيء)	cages	أقفاص

Extra vocabulary

pets	حيوانات أليفة	forest rangers	حراس الغابة	safe (adj.)	أمن
zoos	حدائق الحيوان	special (adj.)	خاص / مميز	spaces	مساحات
stronger (adj.)	أقوى	health	الصحة	daily (adj.)	يومي
exercise	تمارين / تدريب	rabbits	أرانب	birds	طيور
world	العالم	better (adj.)	أفضل	safer (adj.)	أكثر أماناً

Expressions and Phrases

take care of	يُعتنى بـ	special care	عناية خاصة	move around	يتحرك
get smaller	تصبح أصغر	because of	بسبب	work harder	يعمل بجدية أكبر
simple ways	طرق بسيطة	acts of kindness	أفعال من العطف	care for	يرعى

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
stay	stayed	reach	reached
check	checked	face	faced
protect	protected	create	created

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
make	made	teach	taught

Helping Animals مساعدة الحيوانات

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.



Warm up

What should we do to keep our pets healthy?

Animals need our help to stay healthy and safe. Some animals live in the **wild**⁽¹⁾, while others live in zoos or homes. Each animal needs special **care**⁽²⁾ to live well.

Zoo animals need special **attention**⁽³⁾. Elephants need bigger spaces than monkeys to move around. Lions eat a lot of food to stay stronger than other animals. Giraffes need taller trees to reach their food. **Vets**⁽⁴⁾ often check their **health**⁽⁵⁾.



Wild animals face different **challenges**⁽⁶⁾. Their homes are getting smaller because of new cities. They need clean water and safe places to live. **Forest officers**⁽⁷⁾ now work harder than before to **protect**⁽⁸⁾ these animals and their homes.

Pets need daily care from their **owners**⁽⁹⁾. Dogs need exercise. Rabbits eat fresh vegetables, and they are healthier than other animals. Birds need cleaner **cages**⁽¹⁰⁾ than other animals.

Everyone can help protect animals in simple ways. Small **acts of kindness**⁽¹¹⁾ make our world better. When we care for animals, we create a **safer**⁽¹²⁾ place for them. Being kind to animals teaches us to be better people. Together, we can make their lives happier and healthier.

(1) الحياة البرية

(2) عناية

(3) اهتمام / رعاية

(4) أطباء بيطريون

(5) الصحة

(6) تحديات / صعوبات

(7) حراس الغابة

(8) يحمي

(9) الملاك (أصحاب الشيء)

(10) أقفاص

(11) أفعال من العطف

(12) أكثر أماناً



Read again and answer: **SB**

① What do lions need?

.....

② Why do dogs need some exercise?

.....

③ Why is being kind to animals important?

.....



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

✓ Animals need our help to stay healthy and safe.

تحتاج الحيوانات إلى مساعدتنا للحفاظ على صحتها وسلامتها.

✓ Zoo animals need special attention.

تحتاج حيوانات حديقة الحيوانات إلى عناية خاصة.

✓ Wild animals face different challenges.

تواجه الحيوانات البرية تحديات مختلفة.

✓ Pets need daily care from their owners.

تحتاج الحيوانات الأليفة إلى رعاية يومية من أصحابها.

✓ Everyone can help protect animals in simple ways.

يمكن للجميع المساعدة في حماية الحيوانات بطرق بسيطة.

✓ When we care for animals, we create a safer place for them.

عندما نعتني بالحيوانات، نوفر لها مكاناً أكثر أماناً.

Definitions

owners	They have pets or animals at home.	لديهم حيوانات أليفة أو حيوانات في المنزل.
vets	They often check animals' health.	يقومون بفحص صحة الحيوانات بشكل متكرر.
forest officers	They work hard to protect animals and their homes.	إنهم يعملون بجد لحماية الحيوانات ومنازلهم.

Comparative Adjectives

صفات المقارنة

We use comparative adjectives to compare two people, things, animals, etc.

نستخدم الصفات المقارنة لمقارنة شخصين، أو شيئين، أو حيوانين، وما إلى ذلك.

A) Short adjectives:

الصفات القصيرة:

- عند المقارنة بين شيئين باستخدام الصفات القصيرة (ذات المقطع الواحد)، نضع "er + than" بعد الصفة.
- لاحظ الصفات الآتية عند إضافة الـ "er".

short adjective + er + than صفة قصيرة + er + than

معظم الصفات القصيرة يضاف لها (er) وبعدها (than):

short → shorter

clean → cleaner

e.g. A zebra is shorter than a giraffe.



الصفات المنتهية بـ (e)، يضاف لها (r) وبعدها (than):

safe → safer

nice → nicer

e.g. Cats are safer than lions.



الصفات المنتهية بحرف (y) يسبقه حرف ساكن، يحذف الـ (y) ويضاف لها (ier) وبعدها (than):

heavy → heavier

healthy → healthier

e.g. Fruits are healthier than sweets.



الصفات المنتهية بحرف (ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك)، يضاف لها (er) وبعدها (than) مع مضاعفة الحرف الساكن:

big → bigger

hot → hotter

e.g. Bears are bigger than dogs.



Got it:

The plane is (fast) than the train.

● الإجابة هنا (faster) لوجود كلمة (than) ولأننا نقارن بين شيئين.

✓ Checkpoint Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 My friend is (short) than me.

2 Elephants are (big) than cats.

3 Cars are (fast) than bikes.

4 Trees are (tall) than grass.

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للقواعد اللغوية.

Quick Practice on Comparative adjectives

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 My backpack is (heavy) than yours.
- 2 My car is (fast) than your car.
- 3 The movie was (funny) than the book.
- 4 This puzzle is (easy) than that one.
- 5 Sara is (young) than her sister.
- 6 The English test was (long) than the math test.
- 7 Today is (hot) than yesterday.
- 8 Elephants are (big) than hippos.
- 9 This mountain is (high) than the hill.
- 10 Ali is taller (then) Omar.
- 11 Her dress is (nice) than mine.
- 12 The baby is (small) than his brother.
- 13 The tiger is (strong) than the cat.
- 14 My room is (clean) than yours.
- 15 My bike is (new) than Ahmed's.

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1 colder – Today – is – than – yesterday.
.....
- 2 is – than – An elephant – bigger – a horse.
.....
- 3 slower – the – is – than – rabbit – The turtle.
.....
- 4 than – taller – My sister – is – your brother.
.....
- 5 the bag – is – The box – than – heavier.
.....



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Climbing the mountain was one of my biggest
a) homework b) challenges c) books d) subjects
- 2 have pets or animals at home.
a) Officers b) Vets c) Owners d) Teachers
- 3 The baby needs special
a) attention b) challenge c) cage d) forest
- 4 Helping a friend is an act of
a) exercises b) spaces c) attention d) kindness
- 5 often check animals' health. Super Question ?
a) Officers b) Vets c) Owners d) Teachers
- 6 work hard to protect animals and their homes.
a) Vets b) Forest officers c) Zoo animals d) Pets
- 7 Nurses sick people in the hospital.
a) move around b) get smaller c) care for d) need to
- 8 We all challenges sometimes.
a) stay b) face c) check d) protect

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

officers – forest – face – owners – acts

Animals need help to stay healthy and safe. Zoo animals like elephants and giraffes need large space and food. Wild animals (1)..... challenges like smaller homes because of new cities. Forest (2)..... protect them and their homes. Pets like dogs, rabbits, and birds need daily care from (3)..... . We can all help animals through small (4)..... of kindness.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1 well – need – to live – Animals – special care.
.....
- 2 animals' – Vets – health – check – often.
.....
- 3 need – attention – Zoo animals – special.
.....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 My house is (clean) than Ali's.
- 2 Elephants are (strong) than horses.
- 3 This test is (easy) than the last one.
- 4 The couch is (soft) than the chair.
- 5 Your bike is (new) than Manal's bike.
- 6 The blue dress is (nice) than the red one.
- 7 Hana is (short) than Maha.
- 8 Parrots are (noisy) than bees.
- 9 The plane is (fast) than the train.
- 10 Elephants are (big) than cats.
- 11 Turtles are (slow) than rabbits.
- 12 Camels live (long) than horses.
- 13 The lion is stronger (then) the monkey.
- 14 Salma is (tall) than her sister.
- 15 A mouse is (small) than an elephant.
- 16 Dogs are (thin) than hippos. 

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 zoo animals need special attention

.....

- 2 elephants need bigger places than monkeys

.....

6 Write a paragraph of about (18-24) words using the following guiding elements:

"Pets"

daily care – dogs – rabbits



.....

.....

.....

.....



Lesson 3



Story



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

hunt	يصطاد	trick	خدعة	cave	كهف
pretend	يدعى/يتظاهر	lie down	يستلقي	wise (adj.)	حكيم
fox	ثعلب	footprints	آثار أقدام	mistakes	أخطاء

Extra vocabulary

once	ذات مرة	anymore	بعد الآن	weak (adj.)	ضعيف
each	كل واحد	visitor	زائر	entrance	مدخل
dear	عزيزي / عزيزتي	fluffy (adj.)	رقيق / منفوش	red-brown (adj.)	أحمر بني
hole	حفرة	mountain	جبل	marks	علامات
surface	سطح	ground	أرض/أرضية	true (adj.)	حقيقي

Expressions and Phrases

in danger	في خطر	go into	يدخل	one by one	واحد تلو الآخر
go in	يدخل	none of them	لا أحد منهم	come out	يخرج
run away	يهرب	laugh at	يضحك على	look for	يبحث عن

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
pretend يدعى/يتظاهر	pretended	call out ينادي	called out
die يموت	died	reply يرد/يجيب	replied

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
lie down يستلقي	lay down	stand يقف	stood



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

The beginning

Once there was an old lion who couldn't **hunt**⁽¹⁾ anymore. He was too **weak**⁽²⁾ to catch animals for food. So, he thought of a clever **trick**⁽³⁾. The lion went into his **cave**⁽⁴⁾ and **pretended**⁽⁵⁾ to be very sick. He **lay down**⁽⁶⁾ and called out, "Oh! I am so sick! Please, come visit me before I **die**⁽⁷⁾!"



- | | |
|-----|------------|
| (1) | يصطاد |
| (2) | ضعيف |
| (3) | خدعة |
| (4) | كهف |
| (5) | ادعى/تظاهر |
| (6) | استلقى |
| (7) | يموت |

✓ **Checkpoint** The lion was too (**strong** – **tall** – **weak** – **fast**) to catch animals.

The middle

Many animals heard about the sick lion. **One by one**⁽⁸⁾, they went into his cave to visit him. But none of them came out! The lion was catching and eating each visitor. A **wise**⁽⁹⁾ fox came near the cave. He saw many **footprints**⁽¹⁰⁾ going in, but none coming out. The fox stood at the cave **entrance**⁽¹¹⁾ and said, "Hello, dear lion! How are you feeling?" "Oh, dear fox!" said the lion. "I am very sick. Please come in and visit me!"

- | | |
|------|------------------|
| (8) | واحدًا تلو الآخر |
| (9) | حكيم |
| (10) | آثار أقدام |
| (11) | مدخل |

✓ **Checkpoint** The fox saw many (**people** – **animals** – **birds** – **footprints**) going in.

The end

The fox looked at the footprints again and **replied**⁽¹²⁾, "Thank you, but I can see that many animals went into your cave, but none came out. I learn from the **mistakes**⁽¹³⁾ of others!" And with that, the wise fox **ran away**⁽¹⁴⁾ safely, **laughing at**⁽¹⁵⁾ the lion's trick.

- | | |
|------|------------|
| (12) | أجاب |
| (13) | أخطاء |
| (14) | هرب |
| (15) | ضاحكًا على |

✓ **Checkpoint** The fox learns from the (**books** – **mistakes** – **animals** – **works**) of others.

The moral of the story

We learn from the mistakes of others, so we don't repeat them.

نتعلم من أخطاء الآخرين حتى لا نكررها.

Definitions

a fox	is a small, quick animal with a fluffy tail and red-brown fur هو حيوان صغير وسريع وله ذيل رقيق وفرو أحمر بني.
a cave	is a large hole in a mountain where animals can live هي حفرة كبيرة في الجبل حيث يمكن للحيوانات أن تعيش فيها.
footprints	are marks left by feet هي علامات تركها الأقدام.
hunt	look for and catch animals for food أن تبحث عن الحيوانات وتصادد للحصول على الغذاء.
pretended	acted like something was true when it wasn't أن تتصرف كما لو كان شيئاً حقيقياً في حين أنه لم يكن كذلك.
lie down	put yourself on a surface, like the ground or a bed أن تضع نفسك على سطح ما، مثل الأرض أو السرير.



Tip!

Many stories have a moral. The moral is the lesson a story teaches us. It helps us understand what is right and what is wrong.

تحمل العديد من القصص عبرة. والعبرة هي الدرس الذي تعلمنا إياه القصة، فهي تساعدنا على فهم الصواب والخطأ.



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ The old lion was weak and couldn't hunt anymore.
كان الأسد العجوز ضعيفاً ولم يعد يستطيع الصيد.
- ✓ The lion went into his cave and pretended to be very sick.
دخل الأسد كهفه وتظاهر بأنه مريض جداً.
- ✓ He called out to animals to visit him before he died.
نادى على الحيوانات لزيارته قبل أن يموت.
- ✓ Many animals went into the cave, but none came out.
دخلت العديد من الحيوانات الكهف، لكن لم يخرج أي منها.
- ✓ A wise fox saw footprints going in, but not coming out.
رأى ثعلب حكيم آثار أقدام تدخل، ولكن لا تخرج.
- ✓ The fox stood at the entrance and spoke to the lion.
وقف الثعلب عند المدخل وتحدث إلى الأسد.
- ✓ The fox said, "I learn from the mistakes of others!"
قال الثعلب: "أنا أتعلم من أخطاء الآخرين!"
- ✓ The fox ran away safely, laughing at the lion's trick.
ركض الثعلب بعيداً بأمان، وهو يضحك على خدعة الأسد.



Consonant blends



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:

When you blend, you join one or more sounds together to read a word, like “**drum**” and “**fruit**”.

عندما تقوم بالدمج، فإنك تقوم بضم صوت واحد أو أكثر معًا لقراءة كلمة واحدة، مثل “**fruit**” و “**drum**”.

Fr



frown

يكشر



fruit

فاكهة

dr



drum

طبل



draw

يرسم

pl



plane

طيارة



plant

نبات

✓ **Checkpoint** 1. Listen, circle, and repeat the word that starts with the blend you hear: **SB**

- 1 dog / frown / log
- 2 draw / think / sink
- 3 ball / school / plant

2. Read, sort, and write the words in bold in the correct blend group: **SB**

- 1 I can hit the **drum** easily.
- 2 She has a nice **plant** in her room.
- 3 Adam likes eating **fruit** every day.

fr-:

dr-:

pl-:



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The cat likes to mice.
a) call b) reply c) pretend d) hunt
- 2 The lion used a to catch animals.
a) trick b) track c) plant d) sink
- 3 He to be sad, but he was happy.
a) asked b) lay c) pretended d) went
- 4 The dog left muddy on the ground.
a) mistakes b) footprints c) visitors d) holes
- 5 After lunch, he on the couch.
a) lay down b) heard about c) went in d) came out
- 6 Bears live in in mountains.
a) rooms b) caves c) boxes d) cages
- 7 The old man told a story.
a) lazy b) weak c) strong d) wise
- 8 A is a small, quick animal with a fluffy tail and red-brown fur.
a) lion b) bear c) fox d) fish
- 9 I play the in music class.
a) plane b) drum c) plant d) draw
- 10 She had a on her face. She wasn't happy. Super Question ?
a) reply b) trick c) frown d) hole

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: SB

pretended – cave – hunt – mistake – footprints

There was an old lion. He was very weak and couldn't (1) He tricked animals and (2) to be sick in his cave. He called the animals to his cave and asked them to visit him before he died. Many animals entered and never returned. A wise fox noticed the one-way (3) He didn't go into the (4) and ran away safely.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Once there was an old lion who couldn't hunt because he was too weak. So, he thought of a clever trick. He went into his cave, pretended to be sick, and asked animals to visit him. Many animals came in, but none came out. He was catching and eating them. A wise fox came, saw many footprints going in, but none coming out. The lion invited him in, but the fox said, "I learn from the mistakes of others!" Then the wise fox ran away safely, laughing at the lion's trick.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The lion lived in a
 a) bag b) cage c) cave d) hole
- 2 The fox was and ran away safely.
 a) bad b) wise c) cold d) small

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Why couldn't the lion hunt?

- 4 Summarize the text in two sentences.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1 many – in – footprints – The fox – going – saw.

- 2 to – sick – The lion – very – be – pretended.

- 3 eating – day – every – Adam – fruit – likes.

- 4 learn – the mistakes – I – from – others – of.

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 many animals heard about the sick lion

- 2 why should we learn from the mistakes of others



Lessons 4 and 5

A Research Report

تقرير بحثي



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

research report	تقرير بحثي	endangered (adj.)	مُهدد بالانقراض	species	فصائل / أنواع
the Arabian Leopard	النمر العربي	habitats	موطن / بيئة	the Red Sea Dugong	أطوم البحر الأحمر

Extra vocabulary

forever	للأبد	facts	حقائق	the Middle East	الشرق الأوسط
reason	سبب	gentle	لطيف	sea grass	أعشاب بحرية
pollution	التلوث	fishing nets	شباك الصيد	home	موطن / بيئة
safe areas	مناطق آمنة	amazing (adj.)	مذهل	collage	الصور المجمعة

Expressions and Phrases

around the world	حول العالم	one of the most	واحد من أكثر	fewer than	أقل من
------------------	------------	-----------------	--------------	------------	--------

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
disappear	disappeared	remain	remained
stop	stopped	act	acted

Definition

collage is an artwork made by cutting and pasting photos, paper, cloth, or drawings on a page.
هو عمل فني يتم صنعه عن طريق قص ولصق الصور أو الورق أو القماش أو الرسومات على الصفحة.

The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- Many animals are in danger of disappearing forever. العديد من الحيوانات مُعرّضة لخطر الانقراض إلى الأبد.
- These animals are called endangered species. تُصنّف هذه الحيوانات ضمن الأنواع المهددة بالانقراض.
- The Arabian Leopard is one of the most endangered animals in Egypt and the Middle East. يُعدّ النمر العربي من أكثر الحيوانات المهددة بالانقراض في مصر والشرق الأوسط.
- The Arabian Leopard is in danger because people build houses in its habitat. النمر العربي في خطر الانقراض بسبب بناء المنازل في موطنه.
- The Red Sea Dugong is another endangered animal in Egypt. This is because of pollution and fishing nets. يُعدّ أطوم البحر الأحمر حيوانًا آخر مُعرّضًا للخطر في مصر، بسبب التلوث وشباك الصيد.
- To help these animals, we need to protect their homes, stop pollution, create safe areas, and teach people about them. لمساعدة هذه الحيوانات، علينا أن نحمي مساكنها، وأن نوقف التلوث، وأن ننشئ مناطق آمنة، وأن نوعي الناس بها.



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.



Warm up

Why should we protect animals?

Many animals around the world are **in danger**⁽¹⁾ of **disappearing**⁽²⁾ forever. These animals are called **endangered**⁽³⁾ **species**⁽⁴⁾. Here are some important **facts**⁽⁵⁾ about endangered animals.

The **Arabian Leopard**⁽⁶⁾ is one of the most endangered animals in Egypt and the **Middle East**⁽⁷⁾. **Fewer than** 200 of these beautiful cats **remain**⁽⁸⁾ in the wild. One **reason**⁽⁹⁾ is that these animals are in danger because people build houses in their **habitats**⁽¹⁰⁾.



The Red Sea **Dugong**⁽¹¹⁾ is another endangered animal in Egypt. These **gentle**⁽¹²⁾ sea animals eat sea grass. They are in danger because of **pollution**⁽¹³⁾ and fishing **nets**⁽¹⁴⁾.



To help these animals, we need to:

- protect their homes.
- stop pollution.
- create safe areas.
- teach people about them.

If we don't act now, these amazing animals could disappear forever.



Checkpoint

- 1 What does "endangered species" mean?
- 2 Why is the Arabian Leopard endangered?
- 3 What will happen if we don't help these animals?

Tips: A Good Report Has التقرير الجيد يحتوى على

1. Clear Title

عنوان واضح

2. Introduction

مقدمة

3. Facts and Information

حقائق ومعلومات

4. Examples

أمثلة

5. Solutions

حلول

6. Conclusion

خاتمة

Endangered Animals

← title

Introduction: Write and describe the animal you chose.

اكتب وصف الحيوان الذي اخترته.

Many animals around the world are in danger of disappearing forever. These animals are called endangered species. Here are some important facts about endangered animals.

Examples

Paragraph 1: Write about why it is endangered.

اكتب لماذا هو مهدد بالانقراض.

The Arabian Leopard is one of the most endangered animals in Egypt and the Middle East. Fewer than 200 of these beautiful cats remain in the wild. One reason is that these animals are in danger because people build houses in their habitats.

Paragraph 2: Write about how we can help it.

اكتب كيف يمكننا مساعدته.

The Red Sea Dugong is another endangered animal in Egypt. These gentle sea animals eat sea grass. They are in danger because of pollution and fishing nets. To help these animals, we need to:

- protect their homes.
- stop pollution.
- create safe areas.
- teach people about them.

Solutions

Conclusion: Write what will happen if we don't save it.

اكتب ماذا سيحدث إذا لم نُنقذه.

If we don't act now, these amazing animals could disappear forever.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Many animals are and need help.
a) good b) green c) endangered d) healthy
- 2 There are many of birds in the sky.
a) species b) special c) homes d) grass
- 3 A forest is a for bears and deer.
a) box b) desert c) sea d) habitat
- 4 We must stop to keep the Earth clean.
a) pollution b) food c) plants d) water
- 5 The Red Sea eats the sea grass.
a) leopard b) dugong c) lion d) monkey
- 6 The Leopard is in the Middle East.
a) Chinese b) English c) Arabian d) American
- 7 The caught many fish.
a) robe b) fishing net c) report d) boat
- 8 The sun will behind the clouds. Super Question ?
a) disappear b) act c) sleep d) sing

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

nets – safe – pollution – endangered

The Red Sea Dugong is an (1)..... animal in Egypt. These gentle sea animals eat sea grass. They are in danger because of (2)..... and fishing (3)..... To help these animals, we need to protect their homes, stop pollution, create (4)..... areas, and teach people about them.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Endangered species means the animals are in danger of disappearing forever. In Egypt and the Middle East, the Arabian Leopard is one of the most endangered animals. Fewer than 200 are left in the wild because people build houses in their habitats. The Red Sea Dugong is another endangered animal because of pollution

and fishing nets. These gentle sea animals eat sea grass. To help, we must protect their homes, stop pollution, create safe areas, and teach others. If we don't act, these animals may disappear forever.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Fewer than Arabian Leopards are left in the wild.
a) 2000 b) 200 c) 20000 d) 20
- 2 The Red Sea Dugong eats sea
a) birds b) fish c) grass d) rocks

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Why is the Red Sea Dugong endangered?
.....
- 4 How can we help protect these animals?
.....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1 need – safe – create – We – areas – to.
.....
- 2 in danger – disappearing – Many – are – of – animals.
.....
- 3 Red Sea – animal – Dugong – The – an endangered – is.
.....
- 4 need – their – We – homes – protect – to. 

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 to help these animals, stop pollution
.....
- 2 why should we protect animals
.....

6 Write a research report of about (18-24) words using the following guiding elements:

“Endangered animals”

in danger of – endangered species – help these animals



Practice

Animals in Our World
we must protect
if we don't act,

REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

1 Choose

1 M

2

Lesson (2)

vets	أطباء بيطريون	the wild	الحياة البرية
care	رعاية	attention	اهتمام / رعاية
challenges	تحديات / صعوبات	forest officers	حراس الغابة
owners	الملاك	cages	أقفاس
forest rangers	حراس الغابة	special	خاص / مميز
health	الصحة	pets	حيوانات الأليفة
exercise	تمارين / تدريب	safe	آمن

Lesson (3)

hunt	يصطاد	trick	خدعة
cave	كهف	pretend	يدعى / يتظاهر
lie down	يستلقي	wise	حكيم
footprints	آثار أقدام	mistakes	أخطاء
marks	علامات	entrance	مدخل
fluffy	رقيق / منفوش	red-brown	أحمر بني
hole	حفرة	weak	ضعيف

Lessons (4 and 5)

research report	تقرير بحثي	endangered	مهدد بالانقراض
the Arabian Leopard	النمر العربي	habitat	موطن / بيئة
species	فصائل / أنواع	the Red Sea Dugong	أطوم البحر الأحمر
gentle	لطيف	sea grass	أعشاب بحرية
the Middle East	الشرق الأوسط	pollution	التلوث
fishing nets	شباك الصيد	home	موطن / بيئة
collage	الصور المجمعة	reason	سبب

Language in use

Comparative Adjectives

short adjective + er + than + صفة قصيرة

معظم الصفات القصيرة يضاف لها (er) وبعدها (than):

clean → cleaner

الصفات المنتهية بحرف (y) يسبقه حرف ساكن، يحذف الـ (y) ويضاف لها (ier) وبعدها (than):

healthy → healthier

الصفات المنتهية بـ (e)، يضاف لها (r) وبعدها (than):

safe → safer

الصفات المنتهية بحرف (ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك)، يضاف لها (er) وبعدها (than) مع مضاعفة الحرف الساكن:

big → bigger

hot → hotter



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

الكلمة بالعربية	الكلمة بالإنجليزية
lion	فيل
monkey	حمار وحشى
bear	زرافة
spotted	مخالب
forest guide	منتزه غابى

Lesson 2

care	تحديات / صعوبات
cages	أطباء بيطريون
forest officers	خاص / مميز
attention	الملاك (أصحاب الشئ)
forest rangers	الصحة

Lesson 3

lie down	خدعة
pretend	كهف
footprints	أخطاء
weak	حكيم
hole	رقيق / منفوش

Lessons 4 and 5

habitats	مهدد بالانقراض
species	أطوم البحر الأحمر
pollution	النمر العربى
fishing nets	الشرق الأوسط
collage	أعشاب بحرية

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس مدى حفظ الطالب لتصريفات الأفعال.

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Present

Past

Present

Past

caught

sprayed

protect

hunt

faced

taught

disappeared

check

act

lay down



لكي تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about helping animals:

- Animals need our help to stay healthy and safe.
- Zoo animals need + أمثلة لما تحتاجه حيوانات حديقة الحيوانات
- Wild animals face different challenges.
- They need + أمثلة لما تحتاجه الحيوانات البرية
- Pets also need + أمثلة لما تحتاجه الحيوانات الأليفة

"Helping animals"

Animals need our help to stay healthy and safe. Zoo animals need special attention. Monkeys, for example, need bigger spaces to move around. Wild animals face different challenges. They need clean water and safe places. Pets need daily care from their owners.

How to write a report about endangered animals:

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------|
| ○ Write a clear title. | اكتب عنواناً واضحاً. |
| ○ Write an introduction about the animals. | اكتب مقدمة عن الحيوانات. |
| ○ Mention some facts and information. | اذكر بعض الحقائق و المعلومات. |
| ○ Give some examples. | أعط بعض الأمثلة . |
| ○ Suggest some solutions. | اقترح بعض الحلول. |
| ○ Write a conclusion. | اكتب ملخصاً. |

"A report about endangered animals"

"Endangered animals"

Many animals around the world are in danger of disappearing forever. Here are some facts about endangered animals. There are fewer than 200 Arabian leopards remain in the wild. The Red Sea Dugongs are in danger because of pollution and fishing nets. To help them we need to stop pollution and create safe areas. If we don't act now, it will be unsafe for them.

1 Read and circle the correct answer:

- 1 The elephant **drinks/runs** lots of water.
- 2 The monkey **drinks/climbs** trees.
- 3 The zebra **catches/runs** in groups.
- 4 The bear **catches/climbs** fish.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Elephants need than monkeys.
 a) smaller spaces b) bigger spaces
 c) cleaner water d) taller trees
- 2 Wild animals need and safe homes to live well.
 a) bigger cities b) hotter food c) clean water d) smaller cages
- 3 Pets need care from their owners.
 a) weekly b) daily c) monthly d) yearly
- 4 Everyone can help protect animals by
 a) keeping them in zoos b) showing kindness and caring for them
 c) avoiding them d) feeding them only once a week

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 Elephants are (**big**) than monkeys.
- 2 The weather today is (**cold**) than yesterday.
- 3 He is (**tall**) than his brother.
- 4 Marwa is (**lazy**) than her sister.

4 Match the verbs in bold to their meanings:

☐ hunt	a. put yourself on a surface, like the ground or a bed
☐ pretended	b. look for and catch animals for food
☐ lie down	c. acted like something was true when it wasn't



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 An old lion was too to hunt.
a) big b) strong c) weak d) tall
- 2 He pretended to be
a) sick b) fast c) young d) fresh
- 3 He called the animals to his
a) house b) garden c) cage d) cave
- 4 A wise fox safely.
a) ran away b) took care c) cared for d) moved around



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 I saw marks on the tree from a bear's
a) ears b) neck c) eyes d) paws
- 2 The has a striped coat. It runs in groups.
a) elephant b) zebra c) giraffe d) monkey

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

care – protect – cages – healthy – fact

Animals need help to stay (1) and safe. Pets need daily care. Dogs need exercise, rabbits eat fresh vegetables, and birds need cleaner (2) Everyone can help (3) animals with small acts of kindness. When we (4) for animals, we create a safer place for them. Being kind to animals teaches us to be better people.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

5

Omar and Nadia are talking about animals. Nadia's dad works at the forest park. He works as a forest guide and shows visitors the animals. Nadia sometimes goes with him. Visitors there see elephants drinking water, monkeys climbing trees, as well as lions and giraffes. Omar watches a TV program about animals. He knows that lions hunt at night and sleep during the day, and that giraffes eat leaves from tall trees. Omar will visit the forest park to see all the animals up close.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Omar and Nadia are talking about
a) TV programs b) visitors c) animals d) friends
- 2 Giraffes eat from tall trees.
a) forests b) grass c) leaves d) plants

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What do visitors see at the forest park?
- 4 Why will Nadia and Omar visit the park?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

- 1 The cat is (small) than the dog. SB
- 2 Eating vegetables is (healthy) than eating junk food. SB
- 3 The music is (loud) than the conversation. SB
- 4 Dolphins are (smart) than most fish.

6 Punctuate the following:

2

why did the lion trick the animals
.....

7 Write a paragraph of about (18-24) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"Helping animals"

wild animals – challenges – forest officers

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 The boy saw a on his sister's face.
 a) smile b) laugh c) frown d) mark
- 2 He gave her fruit and played the
 a) football b) games c) piano d) drum
- 3 Then they went to flowers.
 a) plant b) eat c) drink d) water
- 4 They sat by a and began to draw pictures of their fun day.
 a) wall b) plant c) class d) desk



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 The is black and white.
 a) monkey b) zebra c) bear d) lion
- 2 To "....." means to put yourself on a surface, like the ground or a bed.
 a) take care b) slow down c) lie down d) pretend

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

endangered – disappearing – danger – remain – safe

Many animals around the world are in danger of (1) forever.

The Arabian Leopard is one of the most (2) animals in Egypt and the Middle East. Fewer than 200 of these beautiful cats (3) in the wild.

One reason why these animals are in (4) is because people build houses in their habitats.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

SB

5

Animals need our help to stay healthy and safe. Some live in the wild, while others live in zoos or homes. Zoo animals, like elephants and lions, need space, food, and vets to check them. Wild animals face challenges, like their homes getting smaller. They also need clean water and safe places to live in. Pets, like dogs and rabbits, need daily care, exercise, and fresh food. Birds need clean cages, and all pets need vet visits. We can help by being kind and caring for animals.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Animals need our help to stay and safe.
a) sad b) hungry c) healthy d) angry
- 2 need clean water and safe places to live in.
a) Zoo animals b) Wild animals c) Pets d) Habitats

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What do pets need?
- 4 Summarize the text in one sentence.



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

SB

SB

SB

- 1 His house is (big) than mine.
- 2 A mouse is (small) than a rabbit.
- 3 A cheetah is (fast) than a turtle.
- 4 Owls are (quiet) than parrots.

6 Punctuate the following:

2

the lion pretended to be sick

7 Write a paragraph of about (18-24) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"A Day at the Forest Park"

forest guide – visitors – hunt at night



A) Listening

(الإجابة راجع لدى الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

- 1 The elephant has a (small – old – heavy) trunk.
- 2 The (lion – monkey – giraffe) has a long tail.
- 3 The zebra has a (striped – spotted – yellow) coat.

B) Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

sleep – amazing – program – know

Omar: Lions often hunt at night and during the day.

Nadia: How do you all of this?

Omar: I watch a TV about animals.

Nadia: That's !

C) Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Animals need our help to stay healthy and safe. Some animals live in the wild, and others live in zoos or homes. Each animal needs special care. Zoo animals need special attention. Elephants need bigger spaces, lions eat a lot of food to stay stronger than other animals, and giraffes need taller trees for food. Vets check their health. Wild animals face challenges. Their homes are getting smaller because of new cities. They need clean water and safe places. Forest officers work harder to protect animals and their homes.

A Answer the following questions:

- 1 Why do lions eat a lot of food?
- 2 What challenges do wild animals face?

B Choose the correct answer:

- 3 Zoo animals need special (challenges – food – attention).
- 4 Giraffes need (taller – shorter – smaller) trees for food.
- 5 (Vets – Police officers – Forest officers) work harder to protect animals and their homes.

D) Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 The elephant is (big – bigger – a big) than the lion.
- 2 The plane is (faster – fast – the fast) than the train.
- 3 He uses a fishing net to (eat – catch – know) fish.
- 4 Eating fruits is good for your (friends – school – health).
- 5 (Hunt – Pretend – Disappear) means to look for and catch animals for food.

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1 these – pollution – stop – To – animals, – help.

- 2 easily – drums – I – play – the – can.

- 3 a quick – a fluffy – animal – tail – The fox – with – is.

- 4 need – animals – We – people – teach – to – about.

- 5 saw – going – the footprints – in – the cave – The fox.

Unit

4

Egypt My Homeland

مصر وطني



Unit Outcomes

● By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

● بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون الطالب قادرًا على أن:

Speaking:

- discuss in groups famous places in Egypt. يناقش في مجموعات أماكن مشهورة في مصر.
- use prepositions of place to talk about different locations. يستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان للحديث عن أماكن مختلفة.

Listening:

- identify key information about a tourist attraction in a conversation. يتعرف على المعلومات الأساسية عن أحد المعالم السياحية في محادثة.
- discriminate between the pronunciation of the /p/ and /b/ sounds. يميز بين نطق صوتي /p/ و /b/.

Reading:

- recognize descriptions of famous places. يتعرف على أوصاف الأماكن المشهورة.
- extract key information from travel leaflets. يستخرج المعلومات الأساسية من النشرات السياحية.
- read numbers up to a billion. يقرأ الأرقام إلى مليار.

Writing:

- design a basic travel leaflet. يصمم منشور سفر بسيط.
- complete sentences using prepositions of place. يكمل الجمل باستخدام حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان.
- write a blog post about a famous place in Egypt. يكتب مدونة عن مكان مشهور في مصر.
- use prepositions of place to complete sentences. يستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان لإكمال الجمل.



Lesson 1

Places in Egypt أماكن في مصر



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:

Main vocabulary



The Pyramids
الأهرامات



Nile River
نهر النيل



Cairo Tower
برج القاهرة



Siwa Oasis
واحة سيوة



Egyptian Museum
المتحف المصري



Khan Al-Khalili Bazaar
بازار خان الخليلي

Extra vocabulary

tour guide	مرشد سياحي	amazing (adj.)	مدهش	places	أماكن
tourists	السياح	first time	أول مرة	near	قريب
many	كثير	take pictures	يلتقط صورًا	Egyptian Museum	المتحف المصري
treasures	مقتنيات (تحف)	people	ناس	gifts	هدايا

Expressions and Phrases

talk about	يتحدث عن	full of ...	ممتلئ بـ ...
Welcome to Egypt!	مرحبًا بك في مصر!	Nice to meet you!	سعيد بلقائك!
Great!	رائع!	That sounds fun!	يبدو ذلك ممتعًا!

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
work يعمل	worked	visit يزور	visited
Present	Past	Present	Past
meet يقابل	met	ride يركب	rode
has/have لديه	had	buy يشتري	bought

Exploring Egypt with Ali! استكشف مصر مع علي!



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:

- Ali and John are at the Pyramids talking about Egypt's amazing places.

على وچون فى الأهرامات يتحدثان عن الأماكن الرائعة فى مصر.



Hi, I'm Ali! I work as a tour guide in Egypt. Welcome to Egypt!

مرحبًا، أنا علي! أنا أعمل كمرشد سياحي فى مصر. مرحبا بك فى مصر!

Nice to meet you, Ali! I'm John. This is my first time in Egypt.

سعيد بلقائك، ياعلى! أنا جون. هذه هى المرة الأولى لى فى مصر!



You will like it here! The Pyramids are very nice. Tourists take many pictures here.

ستحب المكان هنا! الأهرامات جميلة جدًا. السياح يلتقطون الكثير من الصور هنا.

Great! Can I ride a camel, too?

رائع! هل يمكننى ركوب الجمل أيضًا؟



Yes! Many people ride camels near the Pyramids. It's fun!

نعم! الكثير من الناس يركبون الجمال بالقرب من الأهرامات. إنه ممتع!



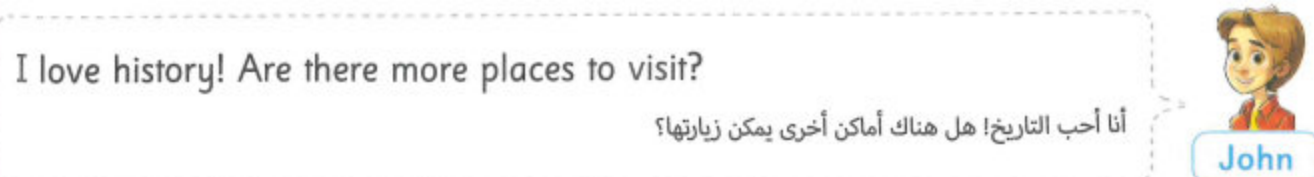
What can we visit after the Pyramids?

ماذا يمكننا أن نزر بعد الأهرامات؟



Next, we can visit the Egyptian Museum. It has many treasures to see, and history too!

بعد ذلك، يمكننا زيارة المتحف المصرى. فيه العديد من المقتنيات (التحف) التى يمكن مشاهدتها، وتاريخ أيضًا!



I love history! Are there more places to visit?

أنا أحب التاريخ! هل هناك أماكن أخرى يمكن زيارتها؟





Ali

Yes! We can go to Khan Al-Khalili to buy some gifts.

نعم! يمكننا الذهاب إلى خان الخليلي لشراء بعض الهدايا.

That sounds fun!

يبدو ذلك ممتعًا!



John



Read again and answer: **SB**

- 1 Who is Ali?
- 2 What do tourists do at the Pyramids?
- 3 What will Ali and John visit after the Pyramids?



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Ali is a tour guide in Egypt. على مرشد سياحي في مصر.
- ✓ John is a tourist and this is his first visit to Egypt. جون سائح وهذه زيارته الأولى إلى مصر.
- ✓ The Pyramids are very nice. الأهرامات رائعة جدًا.
- ✓ Tourists take pictures and ride camels near the Pyramids. السائحون يلتقطون الصور ويركبون الجمال بالقرب من الأهرامات.
- ✓ The Egyptian Museum has many treasures and history. المتحف المصري لديه الكثير من المقتنيات (التحف) والتاريخ.
- ✓ People can buy gifts from Khan Al-Khalili. يستطيع الناس شراء الهدايا من خان الخليلي.



Checkpoint

Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للمفردات اللغوية.

- 1 People used the giant stones to build the (Cairo Tower – Nile River – Pyramids – Egyptian Museum). **SB**
- 2 The (Cairo Tower – Nile River – Egyptian Museum – Siwa Oasis) is a very long river in Egypt. **SB**
- 3 The (Pyramids – Cairo Tower – Nile River – Siwa Oasis) has lots of trees and water. **SB**
- 4 The Egyptian Museum has many (food – drinks – treasures – gifts) to see.
- 5 We went to the Khan Al-Khalili Bazaar to (take – talk – work – buy) gifts. **SB**
- 6 Tourists (drive – ride – walk – buy) camels near the Pyramids.

Practice



Lesson 1

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- 1 There are many places to visit in Egypt.
a) bad b) amazing c) boring d) small
- 2 Tourists like to take many near the Pyramids.
a) books b) clothes c) pictures d) gifts
- 3 Tourists can ride near the Pyramids.
a) cars b) bikes c) boats d) camels
- 4 The has many treasures and history.
a) Egyptian Museum b) Siwa Oasis
c) Nile River d) Cairo Tower

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The Cairo Tower is very
a) tall b) long c) short d) small
- 2 We get from the Nile River.
a) food b) clothes c) water d) treasures
- 3 I like to the Egyptian Museum.
a) get b) visit c) buy d) build
- 4 My father works as a He meets many tourists.
a) teacher b) tour guide c) farmer d) doctor
- 5 Boats sail on the
a) Nile River b) Egyptian Museum
c) Pyramids d) Cairo Tower
- 6 A: Which would you like to visit? B: Siwa Oasis.
a) color b) gift c) place d) game
- 7 is a busy market. Super Question ?
a) Cairo Tower b) Nile River c) The Pyramids d) Khan Al-Khalili Bazaar

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

Pyramids – history – Egyptian – amazing – meets

My father works as a tour guide. He (1)..... many tourists. He tells them about Egypt's (2)..... places. The (3)..... Museum is one of these places. It has many treasures and a great (4)..... too. The Pyramids also are very nice, tourists like to take many pictures there.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

I'm Peter. I'm from England, but I'm in Egypt now. I'm very excited. I want to visit all of Egypt's amazing places. Today, I will visit the Pyramids. I want to take many pictures there. Next, I will visit the Egyptian Museum. I want to see all the treasures. Tomorrow, I will go to Khan Al-Khalili to buy some gifts for my friends. The tour guide told me that Khan Al-Khalili is a busy market.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Peter is from
 a) Egypt b) America c) France d) England
- 2 Tomorrow, Peter will go to
 a) the Pyramids b) the Egyptian Museum
 c) Khan Al-Khalili d) the Nile

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What does Peter want to see?

- 4 Why will Peter go to Khan Al-Khalili?

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 welcome to egypt!

- 2 what can we visit after the Pyramids

6 Write a paragraph of about (18 - 24) words using the following guiding elements:

"The Pyramids of Giza"

tourists – ride – pictures

.....

.....

.....

.....





My City مدينتي



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:

Main vocabulary



library
مكتبة



school
مدرسة



shopping mall
مول تجاري



post office
مكتب بريد



hospital
مستشفى



museum
متحف

Extra vocabulary

city	مدينة	important (adj.)	هام	students	طلاب
teachers	معلمون	another	آخر	doctors	أطباء
nurses	ممرضون	sick people	مرضى	letters	خطابات
packages	طرود	stores	محلات	restaurants	مطاعم

Expressions and Phrases

fell better	يشعر بالتحسن	stay connected	يبقى على اتصال
-------------	--------------	----------------	----------------

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
borrow يستعير	borrowed	stay يبقى	stayed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
read يقرأ	read	feel يشعر	felt
send يرسل	sent	teach يدرس	taught



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Warm up

What can people do at the post office?

SB

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.

Our **city**⁽¹⁾ has many **important**⁽²⁾ places that help people every day. One important place is the school. **Students**⁽³⁾ go there to learn and meet friends. **Teachers**⁽⁴⁾ help them, and the library has many books to read or borrow.

- | | |
|-----|----------|
| (1) | مدينة |
| (2) | هام |
| (3) | طلاب |
| (4) | المعلمون |

Another⁽⁵⁾ important place is the hospital. Doctors and nurses help **sick people**⁽⁶⁾ feel better. Next to the hospital is the **post office**⁽⁷⁾, where people send **letters**⁽⁸⁾ and **packages**⁽⁹⁾ to stay connected.

- | | |
|-----|-----------|
| (5) | أخرى |
| (6) | مرضى |
| (7) | مكتب بريد |
| (8) | خطابات |
| (9) | طرود |

The shopping **mall**⁽¹⁰⁾ has many **stores**⁽¹¹⁾ and **restaurants**⁽¹²⁾. People buy things and eat there. Behind it is a museum with **treasures**⁽¹³⁾ that teach us about our history.

- | | |
|------|---------------|
| (10) | مول تجارى |
| (11) | محلات |
| (12) | مطاعم |
| (13) | مقتنيات (تحف) |

These places make our city a **great**⁽¹⁴⁾ place to live in.

- | | |
|------|------|
| (14) | رائع |
|------|------|



Read again and answer: **SB**

- 1 Why is the school important?
.....
- 2 How do hospitals make people feel better?
.....
- 3 Where can we go to borrow a book?
.....



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ The city has many important places. المدينة بها العديد من الأماكن الهامة.
- ✓ The school is the place where students go to learn, meet friends, and get help from teachers. المدرسة هي المكان الذي يذهب إليه الطلاب للتعلم؛ يقابلون الأصدقاء ويساعدهم المعلمون.
- ✓ The library is the place where students can read and borrow books. المكتبة هي المكان الذي يستطيع الطلاب فيه قراءة واستعارة الكتب.
- ✓ The hospital is the place where doctors and nurses help sick people feel better. المستشفى هي المكان الذي يساعد فيه الأطباء والممرضون المرضى على الشعور بالتحسن.
- ✓ The post office is the place where people send letters and packages. مكتب البريد هو المكان حيث يرسل الناس الخطابات والطرود.
- ✓ The shopping mall is the place where people can buy things and eat. المول التجاري هو المكان حيث يستطيع الناس شراء الأشياء وتناول الطعام.
- ✓ The museum is the place where people see many treasures. المتحف هو المكان الذي يرى الناس فيه العديد من المقتنيات (التحف).

✓ Checkpoint Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للمفردات اللغوية. 🗨️

- 1 They went to the (school – shopping mall – office – hospital) to buy things.
- 2 We go to (school – shopping mall – post office – stores) to learn.
- 3 My father goes to the (hospital – school – post office – library) to send a letter.
- 4 At the (school – shopping mall – post office – hospital), doctors and nurses help sick people feel better.



Prepositions of place حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان

Prepositions of place show where things are:

حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان توضح أين الأشياء:



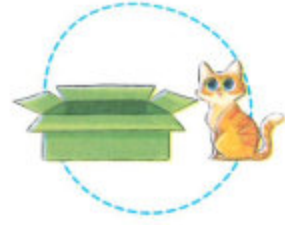
on

على



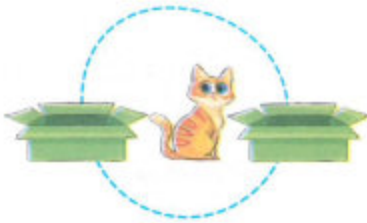
in

في / داخل



next to

بجوار



between

بين



behind

خلف



in front of

أمام



Got it:

The lamp is (in) to the chair.

● وهنا لوجود حرف الجر (to)؛ فحرف الجر الخاص بالمكان المناسب للجملة هو (next).

✓ Checkpoint 1. Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للقواعد اللغوية.

- 1 Fish live (on – in – behind – between) water.
- 2 My school is (next – behind – on – in front) of the shopping mall.
- 3 Sama's house is (between – next – on – behind) the school and the post office.
- 4 My book is (in – on – between – next) the chair.
- 5 The post office is (next – in front – between – behind) to the museum.

2. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 There is a park (in) to my house.
- 2 Please put your phone (in) the desk.
- 3 My house is in (next) of the Nile.
- 4 The man is hiding (between) the door. I can't see him.
- 5 My picture is (in) the wall.

Quick Practice on Prepositions of Place

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 The bird is flying (on) the sky.
- 2 The toy train is (next) the box.
- 3 The teacher stands (next) of the whiteboard.
- 4 Your shoes are (between) to the door.
- 5 Hanaa sits (on) her two friends.
- 6 The mirror is (in) the wall.
- 7 My school is (in front) the hospital and the museum.
- 8 She often keeps her pen (on) the pencil case.
- 9 The lamp is (in) the desk.
- 10 The flowers are (under) the vase.
- 11 The school is in front (in) the shopping mall.
- 12 (When) can I find the nearest restaurant, please?
- 13 The garden is (in) the two houses.
- 14 There are trees (on) front of the house.
- 15 There are stores and restaurants (front) the shopping mall.

2 Reorder to make correct sentences:

- 1 is – standing – Jana – the – tree – behind.
.....
- 2 my – sit – I – to – next – friend.
.....
- 3 the museum – The shopping – behind – is – mall.
.....
- 4 behind – My dog – couch – hides – always – the.
.....
- 5 between – The TV – two – is – armchairs.
.....

Practice



Lesson 2

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 I went to the because I broke my leg.
a) post office b) school c) museum d) hospital
- 2 Students go to to learn English and Arabic.
a) post office b) shopping mall c) hospital d) school
- 3 My house is the yellow house and the red house.
a) on b) in c) between d) next
- 4 A is the place where we send letters.
a) post office b) hospital c) museum d) school
- 5 The has many restaurants and stores.
a) shopping mall b) museum c) hospital d) school
- 6 I go to the to borrow a book.
a) post office b) shopping mall c) hospital d) library
- 7 The has many treasures that teach us about history. Super Question ?
a) museum b) shopping mall c) hospital d) post office

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

shopping mall – borrow – sick – school – post office

SB

There are different places in my town. Young children go to (1) every morning to learn. They can (2) books from the library. When people feel (3), they go to the hospital. People enjoy going to the (4) where many shops sell different things.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

My name is Dina. I live in a town. There are many places in my town. The school is near my house. I walk to school every morning. There's a store next to my house. I can buy food from it. My dad works in the post office where people send letters and packages to stay connected. There is a museum behind the post office.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about Dina's
a) store b) post office c) town d) room
- 2 Dina's dad works in the
a) school b) shopping mall c) hospital d) post office

B Answer the following questions:

3 How does Dina go to school?

4 Where is the museum?

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 The library is next (of) the hospital.
- 2 A: (Who) is the museum? B: Next to the school.
- 3 The school is (on) front of the post office.
- 4 There is a fridge (between) the kitchen.
- 5 My school is (behind) to my house.
- 6 My car is (in) the bike and the bus.
- 7 The cat is (on) the door. I can't see it.
- 8 The museum is in front (to) the shopping mall.
- 9 My book is (next) my school bag.
- 10 There are four chairs (of) the living room.
- 11 My bed is (front) to the window.
- 12 My house is (on) the hospital and the mall.
- 13 The plant is (in) to the books.
- 14 The picture is (under) the wall.
- 15 The boat moves (in) the water.

Super
Question ?**5 Write a paragraph of about (18 - 24) words using the following guiding elements:**

"Places in my town"

school – museum – hospital





The World of Big Numbers

عالم الأرقام الكبيرة



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

A billion is a thousand million. المليار هو ألف مليون.

China has one of the world's largest **populations**⁽¹⁾. In 1980, the population of China reached about 1,000,000,000, which means 1 **billion**⁽²⁾ people.



(1) عدد السكان

(2) مليار

The value of numbers

قيمة الأرقام.

billions

المليارات

ten millions

عشرات الملايين

hundred thousands

مئات الآلاف

thousands

الآلاف

tens

العشرات

1

0

0

0

0

0

0

0

0

0

hundred millions

مئات الملايين

millions

الملايين

ten thousands

عشرات الآلاف

hundreds

المئات

ones

الأحاد



Pronunciation



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:

The letter "p" is voiceless. To say it, press your lips together and blow out air.

الحرف "p" هو حرف ساكن غير صوتي (ينطق بدون اهتزاز الأحبال الصوتية). لنطقه: اضغط شفثيك معًا ثم انفخ الهواء.

The letter "b" is voiced. To say it, press your lips together and use your voice.

الحرف "b" هو حرف ساكن صوتي (ينطق باهتزاز الأحبال الصوتية). لنطقه: اضغط شفثيك معًا واستخدم صوتك.

Pp /p/



pear

كمثرى



pin

دبوس



pond

بركة



peak

قمة



pan

مقلاة



pat

يريت

Bb /b/



bear

دب



bin

سلة قمامة



bond

علاقة قوية



beak

منقار



ban

حظر (منع)



bat

خفاش



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The is a large animal.
a) bond b) bear c) pear d) bin
- 2 This bird has a long
a) pear b) pan c) beak d) peak
- 3 The ducks swim in the
a) pin b) bond c) pan d) pond
- 4 My grandma cooks eggs in the
a) ban b) beak c) pan d) pond
- 5 I want to see the of the mountain.
a) peak b) bin c) beak d) pear
- 6 The can fly.
a) pan b) beak c) bat d) bear
- 7 I want to eat a
a) pear b) ban c) bat d) bear
- 8 I throw trash in the
a) bond b) bear c) pear d) bin
- 9 I the cat.
a) pat b) pin c) bat d) pond
- 10 There is a small next to my book.
a) pin b) pond c) bat d) peak

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

bat – pat – pond – pears – beak

I'm at the park. I can see some ducks. They swim in the (1)..... I see a bird that wants to drink. It has a small (2)..... There is a tree full of delicious (3)..... I want to eat one! I see a (4)..... It flies at night.

3 Reorder to make correct sentences:

1 throw – We – trash – the bin – in.

.....

2 flies – night – The bat – at.

.....

3 cooks – in – Mom – eggs – the pan.

.....

4 swim – The fish – the – in – pond.

.....

4 Read, sort, and write the words in bold:

SE

1 The ducks swim in the **pond**.

2 Mom cooks eggs in the **pan**.

3 The **bat** flies at night.

4 We throw our trash in the **bin**.

/b/

/p/

.....	
.....	

5 Punctuate the following:

1 china has one of the world's largest populations

.....

2 can you see the pond

.....

4

Writing

A blog مدونة



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

St. Catherine Mountain جبل سانت كاترين	South Sinai جنوب سيناء	colorful rocks صخور ملونة
plants نباتات	old monastery دير قديم	nature الطبيعة
adventure مغامرة	leaflet منشور	salt lake بحيرة الملح

Extra vocabulary

early مبكراً	daytime النهار	clothes ملابس
local food طعام محلي	warm (adj.) دافئ	dates بلح
palm trees نخل	olive oil زيت زيتون	price سعر

Expressions and Phrases

Along the way على طول الطريق	At the top في القمة
A popular place for ... مكان مشهور بـ	The natural world عالم الطبيعة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
enjoy يستمتع	enjoyed	climb يتسلق	climbed
Present	Past	Present	Past
wake up يستيقظ	woke up	wear يرتدى	wore

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

A Visit to St. Catherine Mountain زيارة إلى جبل سانت كاترين

By Tarek

March 15, 2024

Many tourists visit **St. Catherine Mountain**⁽¹⁾ in **South Sinai**⁽²⁾, Egypt. They wake up early to climb, and wear **warm**⁽³⁾ clothes because it's cold.

Along the way, they see **colorful rocks**⁽⁴⁾ and small **plants**⁽⁵⁾, and some take pictures.

At the top, they visit the old **monastery**⁽⁶⁾ and learn about its history. St. Catherine is a popular place for **nature**⁽⁷⁾, **adventure**⁽⁸⁾, and fun with friends and family. People can learn about history and enjoy the natural world.



- (1) جبل سانت كاترين
(2) جنوب سيناء
(3) دافئة
(4) صخور ملونة
(5) نباتات
(6) دير
(7) الطبيعة
(8) مغامرة

✓ Checkpoint Where is St. Catherine Mountain? SB

The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Many tourists visit St. Catherine Mountain. يزور العديد من السياح جبل سانت كاترين.
- ✓ St. Catherine Mountain is in South Sinai, Egypt. يقع جبل سانت كاترين في جنوب سيناء، مصر.
- ✓ The weather in St. Catherine Mountain is cold so tourists wear warm clothes. الطقس في جبل سانت كاترين بارد، لذلك يرتدى السياح ملابس دافئة.
- ✓ Along the way, tourists see colorful rocks and small plants. على طول الطريق، يرى السياح صخورًا ملونة ونباتات صغيرة.
- ✓ At the top, tourists visit the old monastery and learn about its history. في القمة، يزور السياح الدير القديم ويتعرفون على تاريخه.
- ✓ St. Catherine is a popular place for nature, adventure, and fun with friends and family. سانت كاترين مكان مشهور بالطبيعة والمغامرة والمرح مع الأصدقاء والعائلة.



Look and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

• A good blog has:

المدونة الجيدة تحتوي على:

- ① The clear title tells the readers what the blog post is about. العنوان الواضح يُخبر القراء عن موضوع المدونة.
- ② The writer's name shows who wrote the blog post. اسم الكاتب يُظهر مَنْ كتب المدونة.
- ③ The date shows when the blog post was written. التاريخ يُوضح متى كُتبت المدونة.
- ④ Pictures /Drawing. صور / رسومات.
- ⑤ Interesting details. تفاصيل شيقة.
- ⑥ Descriptive words help readers imagine and picture what you're writing about, like "interesting" and "popular". الكلمات الوصفية تساعد القراء على التخيل وتصوّر ما نكتب عنه، مثل "شيق" و"مشهور".

Answer these questions to prepare your writing

Where is the place?

What do visitors wear?

Why is it popular?

A Place
to Visit

What do visitors like about it?

What can people see?

What do visitors do there?

Clear title

A Visit to St. Catherine Mountain

Pictures /Drawing

By Tarek ← Writer's name

March 15, 2024 ← Date

Many tourists visit St. Catherine Mountain in South Sinai, Egypt. They wake up early to climb, and wear warm clothes because it's cold.

Along the way, they see colorful rocks and small plants, and some take pictures.

At the top, they visit the old monastery and learn about its history.

St. Catherine is a popular place for nature, adventure, and fun with friends and family. People can learn about history and enjoy the natural world.

Descriptive words



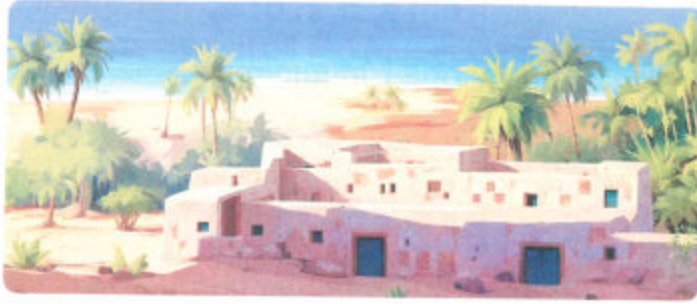
Think and create a leaflet

فكر وأنشئ منشورًا



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



1

Welcome to the Siwa Oasis!

2

PLACES TO SEE

LOCAL FOOD

WHAT TO WEAR

3



4

Salt Lake
swim and take
photos

Desert
see sunset

Sweet dates
fresh from palm
trees

Good olive oil
excellent price

Daytime
summer clothes

Night time
bring a jacket

5

Book now: + 2010XXXXXXXX

siwa@trip.com



Tip!

1 A main heading is the big title at the top.

العنوان الرئيسي هو العنوان الكبير في الأعلى.

2 A sub-heading is the smaller title.

العنوان الفرعي هو العنوان الأصغر.

3 An image is a photo or drawing.

الصورة هي صورة فوتوغرافية أو رسم.

4 A detailed description gives reasons to visit and advice on what to expect.

الوصف التفصيلي يقدم أسبابًا للزيارة ونصائح عما يمكن توقعه.

5 A call to action is an invitation.

التحفيز على اتخاذ إجراء هي دعوة للمشاركة أو التفاعل.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Many tourists visit St. Catherine Mountain in Sinai.
a) North b) South c) East d) West
- 2 We warm clothes because it's cold.
a) climb b) wear c) see d) learn
- 3 At the top of St. Catherine Mountain, we visit the old
a) library b) museum c) monastery d) school
- 4 We can get fresh sweet dates from trees.
a) pear b) palm c) apple d) apple
- 5 We can in the Salt Lake.
a) swim b) sleep c) eat d) learn
- 6 You should wear a at night in Siwa Oasis because it's cold.
a) T-shirt b) short c) dress d) jacket
- 7 People can learn about history and the natural world.
a) buy b) enjoy c) swim d) jump
- 8 At St. Catherine Mountain, we can see rocks and small plants. Super Question ?
a) bad b) small c) golden d) colorful

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

olive – nature – Salt – cold – sunset

Siwa Oasis is a beautiful place. The oasis has many palm trees and (1)..... trees. The weather in Siwa is hot during the daytime and (2)..... at night. Many tourists visit Siwa to swim in the (3)..... Lake. Siwa is a great place to learn about (4)..... and history.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Many tourists visit St. Catherine Mountain in South Sinai, Egypt. They wake up early to climb, and wear warm clothes because it's cold. Along the way, they see colorful rocks and small plants, and some take pictures. At the top, they visit the old monastery and learn about its history. St. Catherine is a popular place for nature, adventure, and fun with friends and family. People visit it to learn about history and enjoy the natural world.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about
 a) St. Catherine Mountain b) history
 c) natural world d) old monastery
- 2 Tourists wake up early to the mountain.
 a) clean b) climb c) draw d) study

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Where is St. Catherine Mountain?

- 4 Why do people visit St. Catherine Mountain?

4 Reorder to make correct sentences:

- 1 clothes – wear – warm – They – cold – it's – because.

- 2 friends – with – family – fun – and – I – have.

- 3 natural – the – enjoy – Tourists – world. Super Question ?

- 4 rocks – colorful – see – We – along – the way.

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 what do tourists do at the old monastery

- 2 you can buy good olive oil from siwa Oasis.

6 Write a paragraph of about (18-24) words using the following guiding elements:

“St. Catherine Mountain is an amazing place”

tourists – warm clothes – nature



Unit 4

REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

The Pyramids	الأهرامات	Nile River	نهر النيل
Cairo Tower	برج القاهرة	Siwa Oasis	واحة سيوة
Egyptian Museum	المتحف المصري	Khan Al-Khalili	بازار خان الخليلي
amazing	رائع	tourists	السياح
treasures	مقتنيات (تحف)	gifts	هدايا

Lesson (2)

library	مكتبة	school	مدرسة
shopping mall	مول تجاري	post office	مكتب بريد
hospital	مستشفى	museum	متحف
city	مدينة	important	هام
sick people	مرضى	letters	خطابات
packages	طرود	stores	محلات

Lesson (3)

pear	كمثرى	pin	دبوس
pond	بركة	peak	قمة
pan	مقلاة	pat	يربّت
bear	دب	bin	سلة قمامة
bond	علاقة قوية	beak	منقار
ban	حظر (منع)	bat	خفاش

Lessons (4 and 5)

St. Catherine Mountain	جبل سانت كاترين	South Sinai	جنوب سيناء
colorful rocks	صخور ملونة	plants	نباتات
old monastery	دير قديم	nature	الطبيعة
adventure	مغامرة	leaflet	منشور
local food	طعام محلي	Salt Lake	بحيرة الملح
palm trees	نخل	olive oil	زيت زيتون

Language in use

Prepositions of place



on
على



in
في / داخل



next to
بجوار



between
بين



behind
خلف



in front of
أمام



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

الكلمة بالعربية	الكلمة بالإنجليزية
The Pyramids	نهر النيل
Cairo Tower	واحة سيوة
Egyptian Museum	بازار خان الخليلي
talk about	السياح
take pictures	تاريخ

Lesson 2

الكلمة بالعربية	الكلمة بالإنجليزية
library	مدرسة
shopping mall	مكتب بريد
hospital	متحف
city	خطابات
packages	مطاعم

Lesson 3

الكلمة بالعربية	الكلمة بالإنجليزية
pear	دبوس
pond	منقار
ban	دب
peak	يربّت
bat	علاقة قوية

Lessons 4 and 5

الكلمة بالعربية	الكلمة بالإنجليزية
St. Catherine Mountain	جنوب سيناء
plants	مغامرة
monastery	النهار
price	بلح

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس مدى حفظ الطالب لتصريفات الأفعال.

Present

visit

Past

worked

met

wake up

climb

Present

ride

feel

teach

Past

bought

wore



لكي تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about places to go in the city:

- o Our city has many important places.
- o One important place is + مثال لمكان هام كالمدرسة + سبب ذهاب الطلاب للمدرسة
- o Students go there + سبب ذهاب الطلاب للمدرسة
- o Another important place is + مكان آخر هام كالمستشفى
- o Doctors and nurses + ما يفعله الأطباء والممرضون لمساعدة الناس
- o These places make our city a great place to live in.

"Places to go in the city"

Our city has many important places. One important place is the school. Students go there to learn and meet their friends. Another important place is the hospital. Doctors and nurses help sick people feel better there. All these places make our city a great place to live in.

How to write a blog post about your visit to St. Catherine Mountain:

- o Write a clear title. اكتب عنوانًا واضحًا.
- o Write your name. اكتب اسمك.
- o Write the date. اكتب التاريخ.
- o Add some pictures. أضف بعض الصور.
- o Mention interesting details. اذكر تفاصيل شيقة.
- o Use descriptive words. استخدم كلمات وصفية.

"A blog about my visit to St. Catherine Mountain"

My visit to St. Catherine Mountain

By Mona

April 17, 2025



I enjoyed my time when I visited St. Catherine Mountain. I woke up early to climb the mountain. I wore warm clothes because it was cold. Along the way, I saw colorful rocks and small plants. I visited the old monastery at the top and I learned about its history. It was such an amazing trip.

1 Read and match:

A

- 1 Nile
- 2 Egyptian
- 3 Khan Al-Khalili
- 4 Cairo
- 5 Siwa

B

- a. () Oasis
- b. () River
- c. () Tower
- d. () Museum
- e. () Bazaar

2 Read and write the correct preposition:

1



The cat is the box.

2



The cat is the box.

3



The cat is the box.

4



I couldn't see the cat because it was the boxes.

3 Read and answer:

Many tourists visit St. Catherine Mountain in South Sinai, Egypt. They wake up early to climb, and wear warm clothes because it's cold. Along the way, they see colorful rocks and small plants, and some take pictures. At the top, they visit the old monastery and learn about its history. St. Catherine is a popular place for nature, adventure, and fun with friends and family. People visit it to learn about history and enjoy the natural world.

- 1 Where is St. Catherine Mountain located?
- 2 What do tourists wear when they climb the mountain?
- 3 Why do people visit St. Catherine Mountain?



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Sama wants to visit
a) the Pyramids b) Cairo Tower c) Siwa Oasis d) old monastery
- 2 Sama wants to swim in the
a) river b) sea c) pool d) Salt Lake
- 3 Sama wants to take many photos of
a) school b) nature c) family d) museum
- 4 Siwa has many palm trees that grow dates.
a) small b) salt c) sweet d) tall



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 The is a place for sick people to get better.
a) park b) office c) library d) hospital
- 2 Many of the go to the Pyramids.
a) nurses b) tourists c) doctors d) teachers

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

office – town – eat – library – mall

I live in a beautiful, small town. In my (1)....., there is a shopping (2).....
I buy my clothes there, and sometimes go to eat. In my town, there is a post
(3)....., too. On Sundays, I go to the (4)..... to read books.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

5

My name is Salma. I am an Egyptian girl, and I am very proud of my country. Egypt is a land of history and great places. Last year, I visited some famous places in Cairo with my family. We went to the Cairo Tower. It is very tall, and we saw a beautiful view of the city from the top. We also visited the Egyptian Museum. It has many old treasures from Ancient Egypt. I learned a lot about my country's history. I love Egypt and I want to visit more great places, like Luxor and Aswan.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Salma is from
 a) France b) England c) Egypt d) China
- 2 Salma a lot about her country's history.
 a) wore b) worked c) bought d) learned

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 When did Salma visit the Cairo Tower?
- 4 What does Salma want to do?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

- 1 Open the box. The gift is (on) it.
- 2 My house is next (on) the post office.
- 3 My father's store is (next) the post office and the supermarket.
- 4 The cat is (on) the door. I can't see it.

6 Punctuate the following:

2

ramy works as a tour guide in egypt.

7 Write a paragraph of about (18 - 24) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"My city"

City:	Cairo
How the city is:	big and busy
Interesting things in Cairo:	the Nile, Egyptian Museum





Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 Khalid lives in a big
 a) city b) town c) village d) desert
- 2 Khalid's school is the post office.
 a) in front of b) behind c) next to d) between
- 3 There's a in front of the school.
 a) restaurant b) hospital c) shopping mall d) museum
- 4 Khalid can see the from his house.
 a) Pyramids b) Cairo Tower c) Nile River d) Egyptian Museum



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 I want to go to the I love history.
 a) Egyptian Museum b) shopping mall
 c) hospital d) post office
- 2 Doctors and help sick people feel better.
 a) teachers b) students c) nurses d) tourists

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

send – behind – sick – hospital – next

My name is Amira. I live in Cairo with my family. My school is (1)..... my house, and there is a big (2)..... next to the school. People go there when they are (3)..... . Sometimes, we go to the post office when we want to (4)..... letters or packages.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

5

I'm Mariam. Last winter vacation, I went to St. Catherine with my friends. We traveled there by bus. St. Catherine is a quiet and beautiful town in South Sinai. It is famous for its high mountains and clean air. We climbed the mountain early in the morning. The view from the top was amazing. We also visited the

famous St. Catherine's Monastery. It is one of the oldest monasteries in the world. We took many photos and had a great time. I really enjoyed the trip, and I hope to go there again.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Mariam went to St. Catherine with her
 a) family b) students c) doctors d) friends
- 2 St. Catherine is famous for its high
 a) mountains b) towers c) houses d) museums

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 How did they travel to St. Catherine?
- 4 When did they climb the mountain?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

- 1 There is a restaurant (behind) to my school.
- 2 My house is (to) the shopping mall and the post office.
- 3 The lamp is in front (on) the table.
- 4 The bag is (in) the door. Open the door, and you will see it.

6 Punctuate the following:

2

We can visit the egyptian Museum

7 Write a paragraph of about (18 - 24) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"Your visit to Siwa Oasis"

Salt Lake – palm trees – desert





A) Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

(الرجاء الرجوع إلى الاستماع أولاً)

- Our city has many important (people – places – students).
- We can read or borrow books at the (city – post office – library).
- If we feel hungry, we can go to the (school – restaurant – museum).

B) Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

did – What – visit – history

Menaa : Did you (1) St. Catherine Mountain?

Nour : Yes, I (2)

Menaa : (3) did you like there?

Nour : I liked learning about (4)

C) Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

I'm Hassan. I work as a tour guide in Egypt. Yesterday, I met a tourist from England. His name is Mark. It was his first time in Egypt. We visited the Pyramids. He took many pictures, and he rode a camel. Then, we went to the Egyptian Museum. We saw many treasures there. At the end of the day, he bought many gifts for his family and friends.

A Answer the following questions:

- What is Hassan's job?
- Where is Mark from?

B Choose the correct answer:

- It was Mark's (first – second – third) time in Egypt.
- Mark took many (gifts – pictures – friends) at the Pyramids.
- At the end of the day, he (bought gifts – saw treasures – rode a camel).

D) Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer:

- The Egyptian Museum has many (gifts – treasures – camels) to see.
- Students go to the (post office – shopping mall – school) to learn.
- There is a beautiful picture (on – between – in front) the wall.
- We can (work – visit – ride) the Pyramids.
- My toy car is next (to – of – on) the table.

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- I – a – Can – ride – camel?
- and – sick – nurses – Doctors – help – people.
- St. Catherine – Tourists – Egypt – in – visit.
- in Egypt – This – my – time – is – first.
- to – The hospital – the – next – is – office – post.

Unit 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 A is an animal with yellow fur. It hunts animals.
a) giraffe b) monkey c) lion d) zebra
- 2 are known for climbing trees.
a) Zebras b) Monkeys c) Bears d) Elephants
- 3 Someone who shows visitors the animals is a
a) forest guide b) tour guide c) trainer d) nurse
- 4 eat fresh vegetables.
a) Dogs b) Foxes c) Cats d) Rabbits
- 5 She felt tired, so she wanted to on her bed.
a) lie down b) catch c) eating d) hunt
- 6 Wild animals need our help to healthy.
a) stay b) feed c) hunt d) drink
- 7 Hesham knew that someone entered his house. There were on the floor.
a) holes b) caves c) footprints d) mountains
- 8 The Egyptian tortoise is one of the most animals in Egypt.
a) hidden b) endangered c) running d) polluted
- 9 We need to safe areas for animals to live.
a) create b) teach c) clean d) teach
- 10 Next week, we will go to the zoo to the animals.
a) feed b) play c) stop d) keep

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A monkey – lions – animals – giraffe – elephant

There are many interesting wild (1) in the zoo. You can see a tall (2) eating leaves from the trees and a big, gray (3) walking slowly. In the trees, you can see a (4) On the ground, a group of (5) are resting under the shade of a tree.

B Forest guides – clean – Lions – Wild – Forest officers

We have to help animals. (1) animals face different challenges. They need (2) water and safe places to live. (3) protect the animals and their homes. Zoo animals also need attention. (4) need lots of food to stay strong.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 The elephant is (big) than the lion.
- 2 Monkeys are (short) than giraffes.
- 3 The lion is (strong) than the dog.
- 4 This summer is (hot) than last year.
- 5 Sahar is (lazy) than Mariam.
- 6 Eman is (smart) than her friends.
- 7 Rana eats (healthy) than her brother.
- 8 A fox is (small) than a giraffe.
- 9 Bears have (thick) fur than lions.
- 10 Camels are (safe) than lions.

4 Punctuate the following:

1 where did you go

2 we visited a forest park

3 omar has two sisters

Unit 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Ali felt sick, so he went to
a) school b) library c) city d) hospital
- 2 Teachers work at the
a) post office b) school c) hospital d) museum
- 3 help sick people in hospitals.
a) Teachers b) Doctors c) Tour guides d) Students
- 4 Ingy went to the to buy clothes.
a) shopping mall b) post office c) hospital d) school
- 5 I bought lots of gifts at the
a) bazaar b) post office c) hospital d) city
- 6 Farmers get water from the to grow plants.
a) Nile River b) Cairo Tower c) Pyramids d) Siwa oasis
- 7 are made of giant stones.
a) Bazaars b) Oasis c) Pyramids d) River
- 8 A/An is a place with water and trees in a desert.
a) forest b) oasis c) tower d) city

- 9 The has many treasures and history.
 a) lake b) museum c) restaurant d) gift
- 10 I borrow books from the
 a) school b) mall c) library d) post office

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A camel – Khan Al-Khalili – Pyramids – museum – Egypt

Last summer, it was our school trip. We visited a (1)....., a beautiful place full of history. We saw many treasures there. Then, we visited the (2)..... . I rode a (3)..... there in the desert. It was exciting. Before going home, I visited (4)....., a famous market where I bought some gifts.

B stores – school – post office – shopping mall – museum

My family and I moved to a new city. It has a (1)..... nearby our house where students can go and learn. There is also a hospital which is important. Next to it, there's a (2)..... where people send letters and packages. In front of it, there's a (3)..... that has many (4)..... for people to buy things.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 My pens are (on) the pencil case.
- 2 My car is (in) the bike and the bus.
- 3 The school is (at) the shop and the library.
- 4 The couch is (in front) to my sister's bed.
- 5 I like sitting (front) the couch.
- 6 The cat is (under) two trees.
- 7 The shopping mall is next (on) the bank.
- 8 The cat is in front (in) the tree.
- 9 The wall is (front of) the bed.
- 10 The post office is in front (to) the hospital.

4 Punctuate the following:

- 1 dalia can speak english very well.

- 2 ahmed lives on a houseboat

- 3 where can you go to borrow a book

Model 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Seif went to the to send a letter.
a) school b) hospital c) post office d) park
- 2 often check animals health.
a) Guides b) Vets c) Owners d) Hunters
- 3 We see many animals at the
a) street b) hospital c) forest park d) city
- 4 Foxes have tails and red-brown fur.
a) fluffy b) slow c) quick d) blue
- 5 He needed money, so he from his friend.
a) borrowed b) hunted c) caught d) cleaned

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

stores – next – shopping – office – amazing

My name is Karim. I live in Cairo. There is a (1)..... mall in my street. There are many (2)..... to buy things from that shopping mall. The shopping mall is very (3)..... . It's (4)..... to my school. There is a hospital on the other side of my house.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 The dog is (in) the door. I can't see it.
- 2 Camels are (tall) than lions.
- 3 The monastery is (front) to the mountain.
- 4 Reem is (short) than her friend.
- 5 There is a TV (in) the chair and the couch.

Model 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We bought when we visited Khan Al-Khalili Bazaar.
a) stores b) gifts c) tents d) stones
- 2 Elephants have long to spray water.
a) trunks b) tails c) ears d) feet
- 3 We must learn to animals from becoming endangered.
a) respect b) protect c) create d) feed
- 4 Endangered animals face, like their homes getting smaller.
a) charges b) cages c) truth d) challenges
- 5 The tricky lion to be very sick to hunt animals.
a) pretended b) called c) heard d) went

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

lie down – cave – footprints – safe – trick

One cold evening, while walking through the forest, Omar saw strange (1)..... . They looked too big to be from a lion. He saw them near a (2) entrance. He knew he had to be (3)..... . He decided to (4)..... on the ground and listen carefully. Then, he heard a sound from inside the cave. He thought he would leave some food outside and leave.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 There is a shopping mall (next) of the hospital.
- 2 The bear is (big) than the fox.
- 3 The book is (in) the table.
- 4 The car is (next to) the building. I couldn't see it.
- 5 Ali is (old) than Karim.



1 Read and complete the dialogue:

history – gifts – Bazaar – Egyptian Museum

Amira : There's a school trip next week. We'll go to the (1)..... .

Eman : This sounds great! There is so much (2)..... .

Amira : Then, we'll go to Khan Al-Khalili (3)..... .

Eman : You can buy lots of (4)..... there! Enjoy your trip!

Eman : Thank you.

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 I work as a (doctor - tour guide - forest guide), I show visitors the animals.
- 2 (Pets - Lions - Wild animals) need daily care from their owners.
- 3 In my room, there is a clock (in - on - between) the wall.
- 4 The elephant is (big - bigger - biggest) than the monkey.
- 5 I go to the (library - bazaar - shopping mall) to read and borrow books.

3 Reorder to make correct sentences:

- 1 are – our house – There – tall – behind – trees.

- 2 The Arabian Leopard – the cat – is – faster than.

- 3 trunks – long – have – Elephants.

- 4 work – Doctors – in – hospitals.

- 5 about – to learn – the museum – I – went to – history.



MODULE 3

Unit 5 : A Day at Work

Unit 6 : The Hundred Dresses (Story)



Learning Outcomes

• By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

• بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون الطالب قادرًا على أن:

Speaking:

- discuss significance of different jobs/uniforms.
- use superlative adjectives in sentences.

- يناقش أهمية الوظائف المختلفة والزي الرسمي.
- يستخدم صفات التفضيل في جمل.

Listening:

- identify the roles of different jobs in a conversation.
- produce long vowel sounds with a silent 'e'.

- يتعرف على أدوار الوظائف المختلفة من خلال حوار.
- ينطق أصوات الحروف المتحركة الطويلة عند وجود حرف (e) صامت.

Reading:

- answer comprehension questions about different jobs according to the information in a reading text.
- identify main ideas in a story setting.

- يجيب عن أسئلة الفهم عن وظائف مختلفة بناءً على المعلومات الواردة في نص القراءة.
- يتعرف على الأفكار الرئيسية في مكان القصة.

Writing:

- write non-fiction texts to reflect the components of a paragraph about jobs.

- يكتب نصوص واقعية تعكس مكونات فقرة عن الوظائف.

- provide a different ending to a story.

- يقدم نهاية مختلفة لقصة.



Lesson 1

وظائف مختلفة Different Jobs



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:

Main vocabulary



doctor
طبيب



nurse
ممرضة



teacher
مدرسة



engineer
مهندس



firefighter
رجل إطفاء



police officer
ضابط شرطة

Extra vocabulary

students	طلاب	costumes	أزياء (ملابس)	coat	معطف / بالطو
job	وظيفة	sick (adj)	مريض	people	الناس
health	الصحة	helmet	خوذة	buildings	مبانى
uniform	زى موحد	patients	مرضى	fires	حرائق
important (adj.)	هام	cap	قبعة	vest	صديري / سترة

Expressions and Phrases

care for	يعتنى بـ	stop fires	يُطفئ الحرائق	Well done!	أحسن!
----------	----------	------------	---------------	------------	-------

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
help يساعد	helped	check يفحص	checked
design يصمم	designed	care يعتنى / يرقى	cared
save ينقذ	saved	protect يحمى	protected

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
grow up يكبر	grew up	wear يرتدى	wore

Definitions

A nurse	helps the doctors and patients and wears a white uniform and a cap تساعد الأطباء والمرضى وترتدى زي أبيض وقبعة.
An engineer	designs new buildings and wears a yellow helmet and a vest يصمم مباني جديدة ويرتدى خوذة صفراء وصدىرى.
A doctor	helps sick people and wears a white coat يساعد المرضى ويرتدى بالطو أبيض.
A police officer	protects people and wears a blue uniform and a cap يحمى الناس ويرتدى زي أزرق وقبعة.
Fire fighter	wears a blue uniform and a red helmet يرتدى زي أزرق وخوذة حمراء.



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية فى النص:

- ✓ Ms. Hala talks to her students about what they want to be when they grow up.
الأستاذة هالة تتحدث مع طلابها عن ما يريدون أن يصبحوا عليه عندما يكبرون.
- ✓ Sara wants to be a doctor. She helps sick people.
سارة تريد أن تصبح طبيبة. هي تساعد المرضى.
- ✓ Ali wants to be an engineer. He designs buildings.
على يريد أن يصبح مهندسًا. هو يصمم المباني.
- ✓ Talia wants to be a nurse. She helps doctors and patients.
تاليا تريد أن تصبح ممرضة. هي تساعد الأطباء والمرضى.
- ✓ Omar wants to be a firefighter. He stops fires and saves people.
عمر يريد أن يصبح رجل إطفاء. هو يطفئ الحرائق وينقذ الناس.
- ✓ All jobs are really important.
جميع الوظائف مهمة حقًا.

عندما أكبر "When I grow up ..."



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:

Ms. Hala is talking to her students about what they want to be when they grow up.
تتحدث الأستاذة هالة مع طلابها حول ما يريدون أن يصبحوا عليه عندما يكبرون.



Ms. Hala

Good morning, dear students! Let's talk about your costumes.

صباح الخير يا أعزائي الطلاب. هيا نتحدث عن أزيائكم.

I'm a doctor. I wear a white coat.

أنا طبيبة. أرتدي معطفًا أبيض.



Sara



Ms. Hala

What do you do at your job?

ماذا تفعلين في عملك؟

I help sick people and check their health!

أساعد المرضى وأفحص صحتهم!



Sara



Ali

I'm an engineer. I wear a yellow helmet.

أنا مهندس. أرتدي خوذة صفراء.

What do you do at your job?

ماذا تفعل في عملك؟



Ms. Hala



Ali

I design new buildings.

أصمم مباني جديدة.

I'm a nurse. I wear a blue uniform.

أنا ممرضة. أرتدي زيًا أزرق.



Talia



Ms. Hala

What do you do at your job?

ماذا تفعلين في عملك؟

I help the doctors and care for the patients.

أساعد الأطباء وأعتني بالمرضى.



Talia



Omar

I'm a firefighter. I wear a blue uniform.

أنا رجل إطفاء. أرتدي زيًا أزرق.

What do you do at your job?

ماذا تفعل في عملك؟



Ms. Hala



Omar

I stop fires and save people.

أطفئ الحرائق وأنقذ الناس.

All your jobs are really important. Well done!

كل وظائفكم مهمة حقًا. أحسنتم!



Ms. Hala



Read again and answer: **SB** اقرأ مرة ثانية وأجب:

- 1 What are Ms. Hala and the students talking about?
- 2 What does a nurse do?
- 3 Why is the job of a firefighter important?

✓ Checkpoint Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للمفردات اللغوية.

- 1 A/An (teacher – engineer – firefighter – doctor) works in a hospital.
- 2 A firefighter uses water to stop (patients – stories – fires – books).
- 3 A nurse wears a white (uniform – vest – building – helmet) at work.
- 4 We use a (helmet – book – coat – costume) to protect our heads.
- 5 Doctors should talk kindly to their (coats – patients – buildings – fires).
- 6 A/An (firefighter – police officer – teacher – engineer) designs buildings.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- 1 Hana wants to be a/an
 a) nurse b) doctor c) engineer d) firefighter
- 2 Youssef wears a helmet.
 a) blue b) red c) yellow d) white
- 3 Salma is a
 a) doctor b) firefighter c) teacher d) nurse
- 4 Eslam fires and saves people.
 a) designs b) teaches c) stops d) checks

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We wore funny at the school party.
 a) drinks b) toys c) books d) costumes
- 2 Doctors help in hospitals.
 a) buildings b) fires c) patients d) students
- 3 The wears a white coat.
 a) engineer b) firefighter c) doctor d) teacher
- 4 A nurse helps doctors and patients.
 a) design b) cares for c) grows up d) wears
- 5 Police officers wear a blue uniform and a at work.
 a) helmet b) coat c) vest d) cap
- 6 A firefighter wears a red to stay safe.
 a) helmet b) costume c) coat d) hat
- 7 A helps people and keeps the city safe.
 a) teacher b) police officer c) farmer d) nurse
- 8 All jobs are for our country.
 a) useless b) important c) dangerous d) boring
- 9 An engineer can strong houses.
 a) design b) eat c) play d) wash

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

coat – checks – garden – designs – helmet

Amira is a doctor. She helps sick people in a hospital and (1)..... their health. She wears a white (2)..... . Kamal is an engineer. He (3)..... new houses. He wears a yellow (4)..... at work.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Ms. Mona is asking her students about their dream jobs. Salma wants to be a doctor. She wears a white coat and helps sick people. Hazem wants to be an engineer. He wears a yellow helmet and designs buildings. Mariam wants to be a nurse. She wears a blue uniform and cares for patients. Mostafa wants to be a firefighter. He stops fires and saves people. Ms. Mona says that all these jobs are useful and important in our lives.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The general idea of the text is about
 a) hobbies b) dream jobs c) families d) uniforms
- Mariam wears a at her job.
 a) white coat b) blue uniform c) yellow helmet d) red jacket

B Answer the following questions:

- What does Hazem want to be?

- How does a firefighter help people in his job?

5 Punctuate the following:

- what does an engineer wear

- let's talk about your costumes

6 Write a paragraph of about (18 - 24) words using the following guiding elements:

“Different jobs”

patients – buildings – fires





Lesson 2

Jobs I Love! وظائف أحبها!



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

mentor	مُوجِّه / مُرشد	wildlife photographer	مصور الحياة البرية
puppets	دُمى (عرائس متحركة)	voice-over actor	مؤد صوتي

Adjectives

amazing	رائع	kind	طيب/عطوف	helpful	مساعد/مفيد
shy	خجول	brave	شجاع	wild	برى / متوحش
faraway	بعيد	loud	عالٍ / مرتفع (الصوت)	high	عالٍ
low	منخفض	little	صغير	large	ضخم

Extra vocabulary

marks	درجات	pictures	صور	photos	صور فوتوغرافية
shows	عروض	smiles	ابتسامات	laughs	ضحكات
voices	أصوات (بشرية)	cartoons	كرتون / رسوم متحركة	characters	شخصيات

Expressions and Phrases

do work	يؤدي عملاً	do well!	يقوم بعمل جيد!
take photos/pictures	يلتقط صوراً	do shows	يقدم عروضاً
make voices	يؤدي أصوات	get good marks	يحصل على درجات جيدة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
learn يتعلم	learned	wait ينتظر	waited
use يستخدم	used	enjoy يستمتع	enjoyed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
get يحصل على	got	feel يشعر	felt
see يرى	saw	hear يسمع	heard
find يجد	found	tell يخبر	told



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.



Warm up

What job would you like to do when you grow up? Why?

Noha is a **mentor**⁽¹⁾. She does very kind and helpful work! She helps young students learn and grow. "I help **shy**⁽²⁾ students become **brave**⁽³⁾," she says. "When they get good marks, it feels so nice. It makes me happy when they do well!"



- (1) مُوجِّه / مُرشد
(2) خجول
(3) شجاع

Amr is a **wildlife photographer**⁽⁴⁾. He has an interesting job! He takes pictures of **wild**⁽⁵⁾ animals. "I find the biggest lions and the smallest birds," he says. "I take great photos in **faraway**⁽⁶⁾ places. Sometimes, I wait a long time to get the best picture!"

- (4) مصوّر الحياة البرية
(5) برّى / متوحش
(6) بعيد

Salma works with **puppets**⁽⁷⁾. She has a great job! She uses puppets to tell stories. "I do many **shows**⁽⁸⁾ for children," she says. "I love seeing their big smiles and hearing their loud laughs. It's fun when children enjoy the show!"

- (7) دُمى (عرائس متحركة)
(8) عروض

Adel is a **voice-over actor**⁽⁹⁾. He has an exciting job! He makes **voices**⁽¹⁰⁾ for **cartoons**⁽¹¹⁾. "I can make high voices and low voices," he says. "I talk very fast or very slow. I make little voices for small **characters**⁽¹²⁾ and loud voices for large ones!"

- (9) مؤدّ صوتي
(10) أصوات (بشرية)
(11) كارتون / رسوم متحركة
(12) شخصيات



Read again and answer: SB

- How does Noha help shy students?
- What is Salma's job?



Read and write T (True) or F (False): SB

- 1 Noha helps shy students. ()
- 2 Amr has a safe job. ()
- 3 Amr needs a camera to do his job. ()
- 4 Adel is a voice-over actor. ()
- 5 Salma makes puppets tell stories. ()



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Noha is a mentor. She helps young students learn and grow.
نهي مُوجهة/ مرشدة، إنها تساعد الطلاب الصغار على التعلم والنمو!
- ✓ She helps shy students become brave.
تساعد الطلاب الخجولين على أن يصبحوا شجعانًا.
- ✓ She feels happy when her students get good marks.
تشعر بالسعادة عندما يحصل طلابها على درجات جيدة.
- ✓ Amr is a wildlife photographer. He takes pictures of wild animals.
عمرو مصور للحياة البرية. يلتقط صورًا للحيوانات البرية.
- ✓ He waits a long time to get the best picture in faraway places.
ينتظر وقتًا طويلًا ليحصل على أفضل صورة في أماكن بعيدة.
- ✓ Salma uses puppets to tell stories.
تستخدم سلمى الدمى (العرائس المتحركة) لسرد القصص.
- ✓ Salma does many shows for children.
تقدم سلمى عروضًا كثيرة للأطفال.
- ✓ She loves seeing children smile and laugh during her shows.
تحب رؤية الأطفال يبتسمون ويضحكون أثناء عروضها.
- ✓ Adel is a voice-over actor. He makes voices for cartoons.
عادل هو مؤدى صوتي، يؤدي أصواتًا لشخصيات الكرتون.
- ✓ He uses high and low voices for different cartoon characters.
يستخدم أصواتًا عالية ومنخفضة لشخصيات الكرتون المختلفة.



Superlative Adjectives صفات التفضيل

Use superlative adjectives to show the greatest degree of something.

تستخدم صفات التفضيل لظهور أعلى درجة من شيء ما.

Short adjectives: الصفات القصيرة

- عند التفضيل بين أكثر من شيئين باستخدام الصفات القصيرة (ذات المقطع الواحد)، نضع "the" قبل الصفة القصيرة ويضاف لها "est".
- لاحظ الصفات الآتية عند إضافة الـ "est".

the + short adjective + est الصفة القصيرة



معظم الصفات القصيرة يضاف لها (est):

fast → the fastest
tall → the tallest

e.g. This is the tallest tree in the park.



الصفات المنتهية بـ (y) يسبقه حرف ساكن، يحذف (y) ويضاف لها (iest):

happy → happiest
heavy → heaviest

e.g. Nora is the happiest girl.



الصفات المنتهية بـ (e) يضاف لها (st) فقط:

safe → the safest
nice → the nicest

e.g. Mona is the nicest friend I have.



الصفات المنتهية بحرف (ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك)، يضاعف الحرف الساكن ويضاف (est):

big → biggest
hot → hottest

e.g. These are the biggest lions in the zoo.



Got it:

Bassant is the (tall) girl in her family.

● الإجابة (tallest) لوجود (the) وكذلك لأن المقارنة بين شخص ومجموعة.

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للقواعد اللغوية.

✓ Checkpoint 1. Choose the correct answer:

- 1 This building is the (large – largest – larger – larger than) one in the town.
- 2 Ahmed told us the (funny – funnier – funniest – fun) story at the party. **SB**
- 3 The yellow snake was (the – a – an – than) thinnest one in the box.

2. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 Amr is (a) loudest voice-over actor in the team.
- 2 My grandfather is the (old) person in our family.
- 3 Omar takes the (great) photos. **SB**

QUICK PRACTICE ON SUPERLATIVE ADJECTIVES

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 She had the (loud) laugh during the show.
- 2 My birthday is (a) happiest day of the year.
- 3 Wow! This is the (bigger) cake I have ever seen.
- 4 Where can I find the (small) size, please?
- 5 The blue whale is (a) heaviest sea animal.
- 6 Is this the (old) tree in the park?
- 7 Salma tells the (funny) puppet stories for children.
- 8 Mount Everest is the (high) mountain in the world.
- 9 I have the (heavy) bag.
- 10 The turtle is (than) slowest animal.
- 11 The snake is the (scary) animal.
- 12 The lion is the (strong) animal.
- 13 English is the (easy) subject.
- 14 This puzzle is the (hard) one.
- 15 This is the (bright) light in the room.

Super Question ?

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1 tallest – building – the – This is – our city – in.
.....
- 2 the fastest – runner – Ali – is – team – in – the.
.....
- 3 the loudest – Adel – makes – voices – cartoons – for.
.....
- 4 December – the coldest – is – month – the year – of.
.....
- 5 is – the kindest – teacher – Noha – school – in – the.
.....



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 A lion is a animal.
a) shy b) kind c) wild d) low
- 2 My friend took nice with his camera.
a) characters b) puppets c) photos d) voices
- 3 My brother is He doesn't like talking to people.
a) exciting b) brave c) shy d) loud
- 4 Firefighters are very They stop fires and save people.
a) shy b) loud c) brave d) low
- 5 A is someone who helps students learn.
a) mentor b) firefighter c) nurse d) police officer
- 6 Teachers give students after exams.
a) smiles b) voices c) marks d) photos

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

laughs – shows – cartoons – wildlife photographer – puppets

Some people have exciting and helpful jobs. Eslam is a (1)..... . He takes amazing photos of wild animals. Hadeer works with (2)..... and tells funny stories. Children enjoy her (3)..... and give her big smiles. Mazen is a voice-over actor. He makes funny voices for (4)..... that children love.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Omar is a voice-over actor. He makes voices for different cartoon characters. He can make high and low voices to match each character. His work makes cartoons more fun. Waleed is a wildlife photographer. He takes photos of animals in their natural habitats. He sometimes waits for hours to get the best picture. Both Omar and Waleed have exciting jobs. They enjoy their work and do it very well.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Omar makes for different cartoon characters.
a) meals b) tables c) voices d) windows
- 2 Waleed takes of animals.
a) food b) clothes c) photos d) voices

B Answer the following questions:

3 What voices can Omar make?

.....

4 What does Waleed do to get the best picture?

.....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 That was the (funny) movie I've ever watched!

2 He's the (fast) runner in our class.

3 She is the (kind) mentor. **SB**

4 This is the (bigger) cake I have ever seen.

5 Today is the (hot) day this summer.

6 She made the (high) voice for the character.

7 He is the (tall) player on the team.

8 This is the (old) book in the library.

9 That was the (nice) gift I received.

10 This is the (clean) street in town.

11 It's the (cheap) restaurant in the area.

12 My little brother is the (noisy) person at home.

13 My bag is the (heavy) bag. **SB**

14 The firefighter is the (brave) one in the city.

5 Punctuate the following:

1 i take great photos in faraway places

.....

2 why do you like this job

.....

6 Write a paragraph of about (18 - 24) words using the following guiding elements:

"Amazing jobs"

young students – puppets – shows

.....

.....

.....

.....





Lesson 3

A

Story



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

carpenter	نجار	furniture	أثاث	gift	هدية
keys	مفاتيح	regret	ندم	nail	مسمار

Extra vocabulary

request	طلب	shock	صدمة / ذهول	carelessly	ياهمال
---------	-----	-------	-------------	------------	--------

Adjectives

skilled	ماهر / بارع	wooden	خشي	final	نهائي
crooked	معوج / غير مستقيم	usual	معتاد	careful	حريص
last	أخير	own	خاص		

Expressions and Phrases

his heart wasn't in it	لم يكن مهتم	over the years	على مدار سنين	stand in shock	يقف في دهشة (مذهول)
poor work	عمل سيئ	from that day on	منذ ذلك اليوم	give his best	يعطي أفضل ما لديه
no matter	بغض النظر عن	board by board	لوحة بعد لوحة		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
admire يُعجب بـ	admired	rest يستريح	rested
retire يتقاعد	retired	agree يوافق	agreed
fit يناسب/يلتئم	fitted	promise يوعد	promised
repair يُصلح	repaired	hammer يدق (المسمار)	hammered

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
build يبني	built	stand يقف	stood

Definitions

fit	to be the right size	أن يكون المقاس مناسباً
wooden	made from wood	مصنوعاً من الخشب
skilled	very good at doing something	ماهرًا جدًا في أداء شيء ما
promise	If you promise to do something, it means that you will definitely do it. إذا وعدت بفعل شيء ما، فهذا يعني أنك ستفعله بالتأكيد.	



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Sami was a skilled carpenter who lived in a quiet village.
كان سامي نجارًا ماهرًا يعيش في قرية هادئة.
- ✓ He built strong houses and beautiful furniture.
كان يبني بيوتًا قوية وأثاثًا جميلًا.
- ✓ People admired his work and traveled from far away to see it.
أعجب الناس بعمله وسافر بعضهم من أماكن بعيدة لرؤيته.
- ✓ After years of hard work, Sami decided to stop building.
بعد سنوات من العمل الشاق، قرر سامي التوقف عن البناء.
- ✓ The king asked him to build one last house as a gift.
طلب منه الملك أن يبني بيتًا أخيرًا كهدية.
- ✓ Sami agreed, but he used weak wood to build it.
وافق سامي، لكنه استخدم خشبًا ضعيفًا لبنائه.
- ✓ When the house was finished, the king gave it to Sami.
عندما انتهى من بناء البيت، أعطاه له الملك.
- ✓ Sami felt regret because he didn't do his best.
شعر سامي بالتندم لأنه لم يقدم أفضل ما لديه.
- ✓ He promised to always give his best from that day on.
منذ ذلك اليوم، وعد أن يقدم دائمًا أفضل ما عنده.
- ✓ He repaired the house and remembered who he truly was.
أصلح البيت وتذكر من يكون حقًا.

The Last House البيت الأخير

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

The beginning

Sami was a **skilled carpenter**⁽¹⁾ who lived in a quiet village. For many years, he built strong houses and beautiful **furniture**⁽²⁾. People **admired**⁽³⁾ his work, and some traveled from far away just to see his **wooden**⁽⁴⁾ chairs and tables.



- (1) نجار ماهر
(2) أثاث
(3) يُعجب بـ
(4) خشبي

Checkpoint Sami built strong houses and (toys – clothes – furniture – shoes).

The middle

After a lifetime of hard work, Sami grew tired. He decided it was time to rest and stop building. But before he could **retire**⁽⁵⁾, the village king came to him with a **request**⁽⁶⁾. "Please build one last house," the king said. "It will be your final **gift**⁽⁷⁾ to the village."

Sami agreed, but his heart was not in it. He used weak wood. He didn't check the windows or the doors. The windows didn't fit. The doors were **crooked**⁽⁸⁾. The house looked nothing like his usual careful work.

When the house was finished, Sami gave the keys to the king. The king smiled kindly and said, "This house is for you, Sami. It's a gift for all your wonderful work over the years."

Sami stood in **shock**⁽⁹⁾. His own poor work was now his home. His face turned red with **regret**⁽¹⁰⁾. He had built this house **carelessly**⁽¹¹⁾— and now he had to live in it.

- (5) يتقاعد
(6) طلب
(7) هدية
(8) معوج / غير مستقيم
(9) ذهول / صدمة
(10) ندم
(11) بإهمال

✓ **Checkpoint** Sami used (strong – colorful – weak – painted) wood for the last house.

The end

From that day on, Sami **promised**⁽¹²⁾ to always give his best, no matter how tired or busy he felt. He slowly **repaired**⁽¹³⁾ the house, **board by board**⁽¹⁴⁾, and made it strong and beautiful again. And with each **nail**⁽¹⁵⁾ he hammered, Sami remembered who he truly was.

(12)	يوعد
(13)	يُصلح
(14)	لوحة بعد لوحة
(15)	مسمار

✓ **Checkpoint** Sami's face turned red with (regret – anger – happiness – pride).

The moral of the story

Always do your best – your work shows who you are.

دائمًا قدم أفضل ما لديك – فعملك يعبر عنك.

✍ **Read again and answer the questions:** SB

1 Why did Sami stop working?

.....

2 What did the king want from Sami?

.....

3 How did Sami feel when he knew the house was his?

.....

✍ **Read and circle the correct answer:** SB

- 1 Sami was a **skilled** / **poor** carpenter.
- 2 The king asked Sami to build **his own house** / **a gift for the village**.
- 3 Sami used **strong** / **weak** wood to build the house.
- 4 Sami was **happy** / **shocked** when he knew the house was for him.
- 5 The story teaches us to **do our best** / **stop when tired**.



Pronunciation

Silent "-e"



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:

When a silent "-e" comes at the end of the word after one consonant, it makes the vowel before it a long vowel.

عندما تأتي "e" الصامتة في نهاية الكلمة بعد حرف ساكن واحد، فإنها تجعل الصوت المتحرك الذي قبلها صوتاً طويلاً. «تنطق مثل اسم الحرف نفسه».

e.g.



face

وجه



gate

بوابة



nine

تسعة



slide

زحليقة



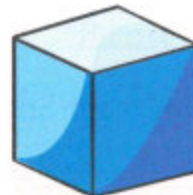
rope

حبل



stone

حجر



cube

مكعب



flute

ناي / مزمار



Checkpoint

Listen and complete with long vowel words. Then repeat the sentences:

- 1 I play on the in the park.
- 2 My house has a very big
- 3 My sister can play the



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 A carpenter works with
a) books b) wood c) food d) cars
- 2 I gave my friend a on her birthday.
a) nail b) gift c) key d) request
- 3 Use the to open the door.
a) nail b) key c) chair d) table
- 4 Sami is a carpenter. He makes great things.
a) usual b) skilled c) wooden d) crooked
- 5 Beds, chairs, and tables are
a) clothes b) furniture c) animals d) tools
- 6 I play on the in the park.
a) slice b) slide c) food d) gate
- 7 My cousin can play the She likes music.
a) van b) cube c) rope d) flute
- 8 He didn't study and felt after the exam.
a) happy b) regret c) excited d) fun
- 9 We can't close the window because it is
a) clean b) wooden c) crooked d) beautiful
- 10 I sent a to join the club. Super Question ?
a) regret b) nail c) request d) gift

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

gift – wood – carpenter – face – work

SB

Sami was a skilled (1)..... who lived in a quiet village. After many years of hard (2)....., he felt tired and wanted to stop. But the king asked him to build one last house as a (3)..... to the village. Sami used weak (4)..... and didn't check the windows or the doors. When the house was finished, the king said it was for him. Sami was shocked.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Everyone in a village admired the beautiful furniture and houses made by a skilled man called Shady. Shady was a great carpenter. One day, he felt tired and wanted to stop. But the king asked him to build one last house. Shady agreed, but he didn't work well. He used weak wood. The windows and doors were not good. When he finished, the king said, "This house is for you." Shady was shocked because he didn't build it well. So, he repaired the house and made it strong again.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The general idea of the text is about good
a) food b) work c) clothes d) plant
- Shady used wood to build the last house.
a) strong b) soft c) colorful d) weak

B Answer the following questions:

- What was Shady's job?
.....

- Why was Shady shocked?
.....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- village – lived – in – a – Salem – quiet.
.....

- turned – with – Her face – regret – red.
.....

- doors – didn't – Sami – the – check.
.....

- Salma – house – is – you, – This – for.
.....

Super Question 

5 Punctuate the following:

 bassant remembered who she truly was
.....



Lessons 4 and 5

Writing and Project

Writing



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

fire station	محطة إطفاء	equipment	معدات	fire truck	سيارة إطفاء
alarm	جرس إنذار	danger	خطر	tools	أدوات
water hoses	خراطيم مياه	ladders	سلالم	oxygen tanks	أسطوانات أكسجين

Adjectives

local	محلي	thick	سميك	bright	لامع
heavy	ثقل	safe	آمن	ready	جاهز/مستعد
special	خاص/مميز	dangerous	خطير	proud	فخور

Extra vocabulary

hero	بطل	neighbor	جار	protective uniform	زى واقٍ
right place	المكان الصحيح	saving lives	إنقاذ الأرواح	stripes	خطوط
community	مجتمع	origami	فن طي الورق	Japanese art	فن ياباني

Expressions and Phrases

make sure	يتأكد	put on	يرتدي	in danger	في خطر
fight fires	يُطفئ/يكافح الحرائق	make a difference	يُحدث فرقاً		

Conjugation of verbs

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
keep يحافظ على	kept	ring يرن	rang
ride يركب	rode	fight يقاتل / يكافح	fought

Definitions

Origami

is an art form that is made by folding paper to make shapes, animals, or objects
الأوريغامي هو شكل فني يتم عن طريق طي الورق لصنع الأشكال أو الحيوانات أو الأشياء.

Look and read:

أبطال يكافحون الحرائق Heroes Who Fight Fires

My neighbor, Omar, is a firefighter at our local fire station⁽¹⁾. He wears a thick protective uniform⁽²⁾ with bright yellow stripes and a heavy helmet⁽³⁾ to keep him safe.

Every day at the station, he checks his equipment⁽⁴⁾ and keeps the big red fire truck⁽⁵⁾ ready. He also makes sure everything is clean and in the right place. When the alarm rings, he quickly puts on⁽⁶⁾ his equipment and rides the truck with his team to help people in danger. He uses special tools like water hoses⁽⁷⁾, ladders⁽⁸⁾, and oxygen⁽⁹⁾ tanks to fight fires and save people.

Omar says the part he likes about his job is saving lives and protecting our community. The work is dangerous, but he's proud⁽¹⁰⁾ to be a firefighter because he likes helping others and making a difference.



- (1) محطة إطفاء
(2) زي واق سميك
(3) خوذة ثقيلة
(4) معدات
(5) سيارة إطفاء
(6) يرتدى
(7) خراطيم مياه
(8) سلالم
(9) أسطوانات أكسجين
(10) فخور

The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- My neighbor, Omar, is a firefighter. He works at our local fire station.

جارنا عمر رجل إطفاء. وهو يعمل في محطة الإطفاء المحلية لدينا.

- He wears a thick uniform and a heavy helmet.

يرتدى زيًا سميكًا وخوذة ثقيلة.

- He checks the equipment every day.

يفحص المعدات كل يوم.

- He keeps the fire truck clean and ready.

يحافظ على نظافة وتجهيز سيارة الإطفاء.

- He works with a team to help people.

هو يعمل مع فريق لمساعدة الناس.

- When the alarm rings, he puts on his uniform quickly.

عندما يدق الإنذار، يرتدى زيّه بسرعة.

- He uses water hoses, ladders, and oxygen tanks to fight fires.

يستخدم خراطيم المياه والسلالم وأسطوانات الأكسجين لمكافحة الحرائق.

- Omar is proud because he helps people and saves lives.

عمر يشعر بالفخر لأنه يساعد الناس وينقذ الأرواح.

How to write a non-fiction text

كيفية كتابة نص واقعي



Tip!

When you write a non-fiction text, ask yourself:

عندما تكتب نصًا واقعيًا، اسأل نفسك:

Is the information true?

هل المعلومات صحيحة؟

Did I make anything up?

هل اختلقت أي شيء؟

Is my source reliable?

هل مصدرى موثوق؟

Non-fiction writing should include:

الكتابة الواقعية يجب أن تشمل:

- An introductory sentence جملة افتتاحية
- Details that are all true. تفاصيل حقيقية بالكامل
- Adjectives صفات
- A closing sentence جملة ختامية

An introductory sentence

Details that are all true

My neighbor, Omar, is a firefighter at our local fire station. He wears a thick protective uniform with bright yellow stripes and a heavy helmet to keep him safe. Every day at the station, he checks his equipment and keeps the big red fire truck ready. He also makes sure everything is clean and in the right place. When the alarm rings, he quickly puts on his equipment and rides the truck with his team to help people in danger. He uses special tools like water hoses, ladders, and oxygen tanks to fight fires and save people.

Omar says the part he likes about his job is saving lives and protecting our community. The work is dangerous, but he's proud to be a firefighter because he likes helping others and making a difference.

Adjectives

A closing sentence



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Firefighters wear a uniform to stay safe.
a) light b) protective c) school d) colorful
- 2 The firefighter keeps the fire truck in the
a) classroom b) hospital c) fire station d) garden
- 3 They use to put out fires.
a) bright colors b) right place c) water hoses d) communities
- 4 The rings when there is a fire in the building.
a) doorbell b) alarm c) music d) TV
- 5 Firefighters help people when the place is very
a) hot b) fun c) dangerous d) boring
- 6 We use to reach high buildings.
a) beds b) ladders c) windows d) fans
- 7 Firefighters use special to save people.
a) toys b) tools c) games d) books
- 8 Oxygen help firefighters breathe in smoke.
a) bottles b) masks c) tanks d) cans
- 9 The uniform is and keeps him safe.
a) short b) cold c) thick d) thin
- 10 Firefighters check their every morning before work.
a) food b) equipment c) clothes d) books

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

community – truck – proud – neighbor – stripes

Omar is a firefighter. He is my helpful (1)..... . He works hard to protect our (2)..... . He wears a red uniform with bright yellow (3)..... . He works with his team to save people. He feels (4)..... of his job because he saves lives and keeps us safe.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

I think being a firefighter is one of the most important and helpful jobs in the world. Firefighters work very hard every day. They must be brave, strong, and quick. They wear a thick protective uniform with a helmet to stay safe. They use water hoses, ladders, and special tools to fight fires and save people from danger. Firefighters help the whole community by keeping people safe and protecting buildings. Their work is not easy, but it is very important.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The general idea of the text is about
a) teachers b) firefighters c) nurses d) drivers
- A firefighter must be
a) shy and slow b) quiet and kind c) brave and strong d) tall and fast

B Answer the following questions:

- What do firefighters wear to stay safe?
.....

- How do firefighters help the community?
.....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- save – danger – who are – people – Firefighters – in.
.....

- station – at – work – I – fire – the.
.....

- Noah – a – uniform – protective – wears.
.....

- His – important – is – very – job.
.....

5 Write a paragraph of about (18 - 24) words using the following guiding elements:

“Firefighters”

fire station – helmet – save





يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

doctor	طبيب	nurse	ممرضة
teacher	مدرس	engineer	مهندس
firefighter	رجل إطفاء	police officer	ضابط شرطة
students	طلاب	costumes	أزياء (ملابس)
coat	معطف / بالطو	job	وظيفة
fires	حرائق	helmet	خوذة
health	الصحة	buildings	مباني
uniform	زى موحد	patients	مرضى

Lesson (2)

mentor	مُوجه	wildlife photographer	مصور الحياة البرية
voice-over actor	مؤد صوتي	marks	درجات
pictures/ photos	صور	smiles	ابتسامات
laughs	ضحكات	shows	عروض
voices	أصوات (بشرية)	cartoons	كرتون / رسوم متحركة
characters	شخصيات	puppets	دمى (عرائس متحركة)
brave	شجاع	wild	بري / وحشي
faraway	بعيد	interesting	ممتع / شيق
loud	عالي / مرتفع (الصوت)	shy	خجول

Lesson (3)

carpenter	نجار	furniture	أثاث
gift	هدية	keys	مفاتيح
regret	ندم	nail	مسمار
request	طلب	shock	ذهول
skilled	ماهر / بارع	crooked	معوج - غير مستقيم
wooden	خشبي	final	نهائي
careful	حريص	usual	معتاد / عادي
gate	بوابة	slide	زحليقة
rope	حبل	stone	حجر

Lessons (4 and 5)

fire station	محطة إطفاء	protective uniform	زى واقٍ
equipment	معدات	fire truck	سيارة إطفاء
right place	المكان الصحيح	alarm	جرس إنذار
tools	أدوات	water hoses	خراطيم مياه
ladders	سلالم	oxygen tanks	أسطوانات أكسجين
neighbor	جار	community	مجتمع
proud	فخور	thick	سميك
ready	جاهز	heavy	ثقيل
dangerous	خطير	stripes	خطوط

Language in use

Superlative adjectives

Short adjectives

the + short adjective + est

e.g. Turtles are the slowest animals.





تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

الكلمة بالعربية	الكلمة بالإنجليزية
doctor	مرضى
nurse	أزياء (ملابس)
health	خوذة
coat	زى موحد
sick	مباني

Lesson 2

الكلمة بالعربية	الكلمة بالإنجليزية
photos	مُوجّه / مُرشد
puppets	مصور الحياة البرية
cartoons	مؤدّ صوتي
voices	شخصيات

Lesson 3

الكلمة بالعربية	الكلمة بالإنجليزية
shock	أثاث
regret	مسمار
wooden	معوّج / غير مستقيم
skilled	طلب
gate	نجار

Lessons 4 and 5

الكلمة بالعربية	الكلمة بالإنجليزية
fire station	زى واقٍ
ladders	سيارة إطفاء
alarm	خرطوم مياه
neighbor	أسطوانات أكسجين
community	معدات

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس مدى حفظ الطالب لتصريفات الأفعال.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present

grow up

wear

retire

Past

designed

rang

Present

protect

heat

promise

Past

felt

fought



لكي تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about you what you want to be when you grow up:

- o Hello everyone! My name is + اسمك.
- o When I grow up, I want to be + اسم الوظيفة التي تريد أن تعمل بها
- o They wear + الزي الرسمي لتلك الوظيفة
- o They + الطريقة التي يساعدون بها الناس
- o All the jobs are important, but I think this job is really interesting.

"What I want to be when I grow up"

Hello everyone! My name is Alaa. When I grow up, I want to be an engineer. Engineers wear yellow vests and helmets to protect their heads. They design new buildings for people to live in. All the jobs are important, but I think this job is really interesting.

How to write a non-fiction text about someone you know:

- o Write an introductory sentence about this person. اكتب جملة افتتاحية عن هذا الشخص.
- o Add details that are all true. أضف تفاصيل حقيقية.
- o Use adjectives to describe him/his job. استخدم صفات لوصف شكله / عمله.
- o Write a closing sentence. اكتب جملة ختامية.

"A non-fiction text about someone you know"

My neighbor Eman is a doctor in the local hospital. She always wears a long white coat and gloves to protect her hand. She is very active and kind. She helps many people every day. She sometimes works at night. Her work is important to everyone in the town. She feels proud to be a doctor and enjoys helping people.

1 Read and complete with the words in the box:

engineer – nurse – police officer – doctor – firefighter

- 1 A/An wears a white coat.
- 2 A/An wears a white uniform and a cap.
- 3 A/An wears a yellow helmet and a vest.
- 4 A/An wears a blue uniform and a red helmet.
- 5 A/An wears a blue uniform and a cap.

2 Read and complete with the words in the box:

Wooden – promise – Skilled – Fit

- 1 means to be the right size.
- 2 means made of wood.
- 3 means very good at doing something.
- 4 If you to do something, it means that you will definitely do it.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 My grandpa is the person I know.
a) wiser b) wiser than c) wisest d) wise
- 2 Ahmed told us the story at the party.
a) funniest b) funny c) funnier d) fun
- 3 August is the month of the year.
a) hot b) hotter than c) hottest d) hotter

4 Read and rewrite the sentences using the correct superlative adjective between brackets:

- 1 I think a teacher's job is the (nice) job.
- 2 This is the (big) box in the room.
- 3 A firefighter carries the (heavy) tools.
- 4 Sami built the (weak) house.



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

1 Sami was a skilled

(الإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- a) driver b) farmer c) carpenter d) teacher

2 He built nice

- a) food b) furniture c) clothes d) books

3 The king asked him to build a final

- a) shop b) school c) house d) boat

4 Sami used wood.

- a) good b) new c) strong d) weak



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

1 "....." means to be the right size.

- a) Wooden b) Fit c) Large d) Shy

2 When I do shows for children, I work with

- a) photos b) ladders c) puppets d) trucks

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

SB

2

photo – neighbor – photographer – dangerous – animals

This is my uncle Amr. He takes pictures of wild (1)..... He is a very smart wildlife (2)..... Everyone says that Amr's job is really (3)....., but he finds it quite interesting. Sometimes, he waits for a very long time to get the best (4)..... He likes wild animals and being in nature.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

5

Eslam is my neighbor. He is a firefighter. He wears a special uniform and a heavy helmet to stay safe. At the fire station, he checks the truck and his tools every day. When the alarm rings, he rides the truck with his team to help people. He uses hoses and ladders to stop fires. Eslam loves his job because he saves lives. It is dangerous, but he feels proud to help others and protect the town.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Eslam wears a helmet to
a) play games b) stay safe c) drive fast d) clean the truck
- 2 He checks the and his tools every day.
a) computer b) table c) truck d) train

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What does Eslam do when the alarm rings?
- 4 Summarize the passage in two sentences.



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

- 1 This is the (tall) police officer in the station.
- 2 That nurse is the (kind) person I know.
- 3 Kamal is the (fast) runner in the team.
- 4 My father is the (brave) firefighter in town.

6 Punctuate the following:

2

the engineer wears a yellow helmet and a vest

7 Write a paragraph of about (18 - 24) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"Police officers"

uniform – protect – important





Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 My neighbor Omar is a

- a) teacher b) firefighter c) driver d) cook

2 He wears a uniform.

- a) thin b) thick c) white d) green

3 He wears a heavy

- a) jacket b) cap c) helmet d) shirt

4 Every day, he checks his

- a) phone b) clothes c) equipment d) lunch



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

1 The carpenter will the nail now.

- a) hammer b) stand c) build d) design

2 If you to do something, it means that you will definitely do it.

- a) save b) protect c) feel d) promise

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

shy – shows – voices – job – wildlife

Adel is a voice-over actor who works with cartoons. He makes funny (1).....
for small and big characters. Children enjoy the (2)..... he makes at school
events. He loves his (3)..... because it makes people happy. Adel helps
(4)..... children enjoy life and smile more.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

5

Noha is a mentor. She helps young students at school. Every day, she talks to shy
children and helps them feel brave. "When they do well, I feel happy," she says.
Her work is kind and important. Adel is a voice-over actor. He makes voices for
funny cartoons. He can speak very fast or very slow. He uses high voices for small
characters and low voices for big ones. "It's fun!" he says. "I love my job!"

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Noha helps children who are
a) fast b) shy c) funny d) tall
- 2 The underlined word "funny" means that it makes us
a) laugh b) cry c) ring d) speak

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 How does Noha feel when students do well?
- 4 What job does Adel do?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

- 1 This is the (small) puppet in the show.
- 2 Take care! This is the (hot) pot.
- 3 Amany wrote the (long) paragraph.
- 4 The (young) voice-over actor won the prize.

2

6 Punctuate the following:

sami was shocked when he knew the house was for him

7

7 Write a paragraph of about (18 - 24) words using the following guiding elements:

"A job you want to do"

What do you do in your job? – What do you wear in your job?

Where do you work?





A) Listening

(الإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

4.5

- 1 Khaleel is a (firefighter – tour guide – police officer).
- 2 He wears a (red uniform – blue shirt – green jacket).
- 3 He uses a (ladder – net – camera) to do his job.

B) Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

8

nurse – coat – patients – doctor

Ms. Hala : What's your job, Sara?

Sara : I'm a

Ms. Hala : What do you wear at work?

Sara : I wear a white

Ms. Hala : What do you do at your job?

Sara : I help sick and check their health.

Ms. Hala : That's great! What about you, Talia?

Talia : I'm a I help the doctors and care for the patients.

C) Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

7.5

My cousin Marwan is a police officer. He wears a white uniform and a cap. Every morning, he checks his car and makes sure everything works well. He helps people and keeps the streets safe. Sometimes, he works at night. Marwan says the best part of his job is helping others and solving problems. His job is very important, and he is proud to do it.

A Answer the following questions:

- 1 What does Marwan wear?
- 2 What is the best part of Marwan's job?

B Choose the correct answer:

- 3 Marwan is a/an (engineer – police officer – firefighter).
- 4 Marwan checks his car (in the evening – at night – in the morning).
- 5 The job is (boring – important – safe).

D) Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer:

5

- 1 The firefighter uses a (ladder – boat – taxi) to climb up buildings.
- 2 Firefighters use a fire (net – hose – spoon) to fight fires.
- 3 My grandpa is the (wiser – wise – wisest) person I know.
- 4 August is the (hot – hottest – hotter) month of the year.
- 5 Firefighters always feel (loud – bored – proud) because they save people's lives.

5.8

5.8

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

3

- 1 uniform – protective – wears – He – a.

- 2 Amr – animals – biggest – the – photos – of – takes.

- 3 My – in – danger – was – neighbor.

- 4 an – Hadeer – job – has – exciting.

- 5 very – They – and – helpful – do – work – kind.

Story

The Hundred Dresses



Learning Outcomes

• By the end of the story, the student will be able to:

• بنهاية القصة سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:

Speaking:

- express their favorite character in the story.
- discuss the moral lessons of a story.

- يعبر عن الشخصية المفضلة له في القصة.
- يناقش الأهداف الأخلاقية من القصة.

Listening:

- understand the sequence of events in a narrated story.

- يفهم تتابع الأحداث في القصة.

Reading:

- answer questions about the story setting, character, and events.

- يجيب أسئلة عن الإطار الزمني و المكانى وشخصيات واحداث القصة.

- identify the elements of a story.

- يتعرف على عناصر القصة.

- answer critical questions based on the story events.

- يجيب أسئلة نقدية عن احداث القصة.

Writing:

- write a letter based on the story's events.

- يكتب خطاب بناء على أحداث القصة.

The Hundred Dresses

Title
العنوان

المائة فستان



By: Eleanor Estes

Author
المؤلف

Warm-up

Wanda is a quiet girl. Every day, she wears the same faded blue dress. But she tells her classmates that she has one hundred beautiful dresses at home.

The other girls, especially Peggy and Maddie, don't believe her and bully her. One day, Wanda stops coming to school. Later, the teacher announces the winners of a drawing competition and Wanda wins the competition.

Wanda leaves the school because of the other girls' unkindness. Her classmates especially Maddie and Peggy feel sorry. They realize they hurt her, and want to say sorry and make things better.

واندا فتاة هادئة. كل يوم، ترتدي نفس الفستان الأزرق الباهت. لكنها تخبر زملاءها في الفصل أن لديها مئة فستان جميل في المنزل.

الفتيات الأخريات، وخاصة بيغي ومادي، لم يصدقنها ويتنمرن عليها. في أحد الأيام، توقفت واندا عن الذهاب إلى المدرسة. لاحقًا، أعلنت المعلمة أسماء الفائزين في مسابقة الرسم، وفازت وندا بالمسابقة.

بعد أن غادرت واندا المدرسة بسبب تنمر الأطفال عليها، شعرت زميلاتها - خاصة مادي وبيغي - بالندم. أدركن أنهن قد تسببن في إيذاها، وأردن أن يعتذرن ويصلحن ما حدث.



Story

The Hundred Dresses



Vocabulary



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:



dress
فستان



closet
خزانة ملابس



playground
فناء / ملعب



competition
مسابقة



drawings
رسومات



medal
ميدالية



sign
توقيع



letter
خطاب



announce
يعلن



winner
الفائز

Definitions

faded	light in color because it is old or used	لونه باهت بسبب أنه قديم أو مستعمل
popular	known by many people	معروف لدى كثير من الناس.
annoying	making you feel unhappy or a little angry	عندما تشعر بعدم السعادة أو الغضب
absent	not in a place	غير موجود في المكان
notice	to see or hear something	عندما ترى أو تسمع شيئاً ما
behavior	the way someone acts	الطريقة التي يتصرف بها شخصاً ما
expensive	costs a lot of money	يتكلف الكثير من المال
bullying	hurting or scaring other people	يأذى أو يربع بعض الناس
apologize	to say "I'm sorry" when you do something wrong	أن تعتذر عندما تفعل شيئاً خطأ



Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

Characters

الشخصيات

Main characters

الشخصيات الرئيسية



Wanda

واندا



Peggy

بيجي



Maddie

مادي



Miss Mason

أستاذة ماسون

Setting

المكان

The old school

The new school

Moral:

- We shouldn't judge others by their appearance.

- الهدف الأخلاقي من القصة هو أنه لا يجب أن نحكم على الآخرين من خلال المظهر.



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وقم بتبادل الأدوار:

The Beginning



In a small school, there was a girl **named** Wanda. She was a quiet girl who sat **in the back of** the classroom. Wanda always wore the same **faded** blue dress every day. **Despite this**, Wanda told everyone she had a hundred beautiful dresses at home, all **lined up** in her closet.

في مدرسة صغيرة، كانت هناك فتاة تُدعى واندّا. كانت فتاة هادئة تجلس في آخر الصف. كانت واندّا ترتدي نفس الفستان الأزرق الباهت كل يوم. وعلى الرغم من ذلك، كانت واندّا تخبر الجميع أن لديها مئة فستان جميل في المنزل، مصطفة جميعها في خزانة.

Key words

name

يسمى

in the back of the classroom

في آخر الفصل

faded

باهت/ شاحب

despite this

بالرغم من ذلك

line up

مرتبة



The **popular** girls at school, especially Peggy and Maddie, **annoyed** Wanda every morning. One day, while they were in the playground, Peggy said, "Hey, Wanda, tell us about your hundred dresses!" The other girls laughed. Maddie didn't like how they were annoying Wanda, but she stayed **quiet**. Maddie was afraid of losing Peggy's friendship. Soon, most of the girls were annoying Wanda and **laughing about** her hundred dresses.

كانت الفتيات المشهورة في المدرسة، وخاصة بيجي ومادي، يضايقن واندا كل صباح. وذات يوم، أثناء وجودهن في ساحة اللعب، قالت بيجي: «هاى، يا واندا، أخبرينا عن المئة فستان الخاصين بك»، فضحكت باقى الفتيات. لم تُعجب مادي بطريقة مضايقتهن لواندا، لكنها بقيت هادئة. كانت مادي تخاف أن تخسر صداقة بيجي. وبعد وقت قصير، بدأت معظم الفتيات يضايقن واندا ويضحكن على قصة الفساتين المئة.

Key words

popular

مشهور

annoy

يضايق

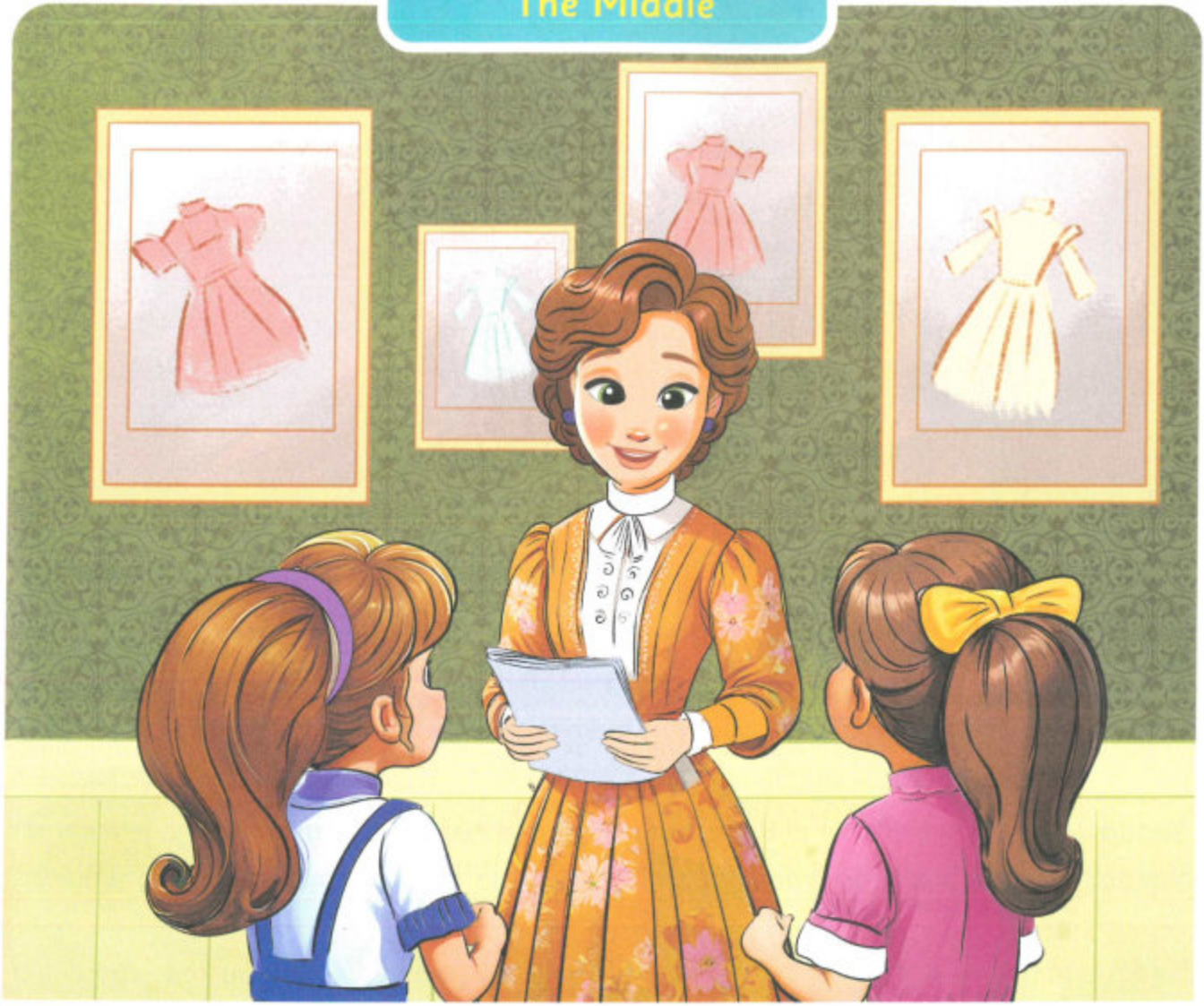
quiet

هادئ

laughing about

يضحك على

The Middle



One day, Miss Mason, the teacher, **announced** that it was time for the **annual drawing competition**. Miss Mason said, "I will choose one boy and one girl as **winners**." When it was time to announce the winners, to everyone's surprise, the walls were covered with a hundred beautiful drawings of dresses of all colors and **designs**. Wanda drew and **signed** all the drawings. She won the competition, but she wasn't there to receive her medal.

في أحد الأيام، أعلنت الأستاذة ماسون، المعلمة، أنه قد حان وقت مسابقة الرسم السنوية. قالت الأستاذة ماسون: «سأختار ولدًا واحدًا وبنيتًا واحدة كفايزين». وعندما حان وقت إعلان الفائزين، فوجئ الجميع بأن الجدران كانت مغطاة بمئة رسم جميل لفساتين بألوان وتصاميم مختلفة. كانت واندا هي من رسمت ووقعت جميع الرسومات. فازت واندا في المسابقة، لكنها لم تكن موجودة لتستلم الميدالية.

Key words

announce

يعلن

annual

سنوي

drawing competition

مسابقة رسم

winners

الفائزون

designs

تصميمات

sign

يُوقَّع

The End



Wanda was **absent** for **several days**, but no one **noticed**. Miss Mason read a letter from Wanda's dad, saying that Wanda's family moved to the big city, where they wouldn't **face unkindness**.

Peggy and Maddie felt **terrible**. They **realized** that when Wanda talked about her hundred dresses, she meant those drawings, her **dreams** on paper. Maddie said to Peggy, "We need to write to Wanda and **apologize**."

They wrote her a letter, saying, "Wanda, your drawings are beautiful and amazing. It's very sad that you aren't here to receive your medal. We are sorry for our **behavior** and hope that you're happy at your new school."

تغيبت واندأ لعدة أيام، لكن لم يلاحظ أحد غيابها. قرأت الأستاذة ماسون رسالة من والد واندأ، يقول فيها إن عائلة واندأ انتقلت إلى المدينة الكبيرة، حيث لن يواجهوا القسوة أو المعاملة السيئة. شعرت بيجى ومادى بالذنب الشديد. أدركتا أن واندأ عندما كانت تتحدث عن المئة فستان، كانت تقصد تلك الرسومات، أحلامها على الورق.

قالت مادى لبيجى: «نحتاج إلى أن نكتب رسالة إلى واندأ ونعتذر لها». فكتبتا لها رسالة تقول: «واندأ، رسوماتك جميلة ومذهلة. من المحزن جدًا أنك لست هنا لتستلمي ميداليتك. نحن أسفاة على تصرفاتنا ونأمل أن تكونى سعيدة فى مدرستك الجديدة».

Key words

absent	غائب	several days	أيام عديدة	notice	يلاحظ
face	يواجه	unkindness	القسوة	terrible	فظيع
realize	يدرك	dreams	أحلام	apologize	يعتذر
behavior	سلوك				



Wanda **received** the letter at her new school. She was happy when she learned that the letter was from Maddie and Peggy. Then, Wanda wrote back to them, saying, "Thank you for your letter. I'm happy at my new school, and I want you to **keep** my drawings."

This **experience** changed Peggy and Maddie forever. They learned that kindness matters more than expensive clothes. They **promised** to always **speak up** if there was **bullying**.

استلمت واندرا الرسالة في مدرستها الجديدة. وشعرت بالسعادة عندما علمت أن الرسالة كانت من مادي وبيجي. ثم كتبت لهما ردًا تقول فيه: «شكرًا على رسالتكما. أنا سعيدة في مدرستي الجديدة، وأريدكما أن تحتفظا برسوماتي.» غيرت هذه التجربة بيجي ومادي إلى الأبد. تعلمتا أن اللطف أهم من الملابس الغالية. ووعدتا بأن تدافعا دائمًا عن أي شخص يتعرض للتنمر.

Key words

receive

يستلم

keep

يحتفظ

experience

تجربة

promise

يوعد

speak up

يتحدث بصوت عالٍ

bullying

التنمر



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Wanda said that all of her dresses were lined up in her
a) closet b) cupboard c) box d) school
- 2 Wanda always wore the same faded blue every day. **SB**
a) dress b) closet c) letter d) playgrounds
- 3 Wanda wasn't at school to receive her
a) present b) dress c) medal d) lesson
- 4 Miss Mason will choose one boy and one girl as in the competition. **SB**
a) walls b) medals c) winners d) drawings
- 5 Wanda drew and all the drawings in the competition. **SB**
a) moved b) sang c) spoke d) signed
- 6 Peggy and Maddie wrote a to Wanda to apologize. **SB**
a) behavior b) letter c) dream d) closet

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

playground – competition – announce – drawings – medal

Miss Mason announced that it was time for the annual drawing competition. When it was time to (1)..... the winner, the walls were covered with a hundred beautiful (2)..... of dresses of all colors and designs. Wanda won the (3)....., but she wasn't there to receive her (4).....

3 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1 Wanda had one hundred real dresses. ()
- 2 Peggy and Maddie were always kind to Wanda. ()
- 3 Wanda won the annual drawing competition. ()
- 4 Wanda's family moved to the big city. ()
- 5 Miss Mason chose three girls as winners. ()
- 6 Wanda's mom sent a letter to Miss Mason. ()

4 Who said this:

SB

Wanda , Maddie , Peggy, or Miss Mason

- 1 "Hey, Wanda, tell us about your hundred dresses!" ()
- 2 "I want you to keep my drawings." ()
- 3 "We need to write to Wanda and apologize." ()
- 4 "I will choose one boy and one girl as winners." ()

5 Answer the following questions:

SB

- 1 What did Peggy say to Wanda in the playground?
.....
- 2 Why did Wanda's family move to the big city?
.....
- 3 How did Peggy and Maddie feel after seeing Wanda's drawings?
.....
- 4 What did Wanda say in her letter to Peggy and Maddie?
.....

6 Do you agree with the action? Why or why not?

SB

- 1 Wanda told everyone she had a hundred beautiful dresses at home.
agree / don't agree
.....
- 2 Wanda's family moved to the big city.
agree / don't agree
.....

Final Revision and Tests



- Revision on Vocabulary
- Revision on Grammar
- Exercises on Each Unit
- Conjugation of Verbs
- 15 Final Tests
- 5 Al-Azhar Tests

Units 1 and 2



A) Revision on Vocabulary

Unit 1

taste	يتذوق	smoke	دخان	enough	كافي
smell	يشم	plenty of water	الكثير من الماء	mind	عقل
hear	يسمع	butterflies	فراشات	touch	يلمس
habits	عادات	see	يرى	brushes	يفعل بالفرشاة
understand	يفهم	breakfast	وجبة الإفطار	market	السوق
senses	الحواس	energy	طاقة	food	الطعام
tongue	لسان	dinner	وجبة العشاء	hungry	جوعان
energy	طاقة	vitamins	فيتامينات	restaurant	مطعم
early	مبكراً	owner	مالك	safe	آمن
sleep	ينام	greedy	طماع	wonderful	رائع
stay sharp	تبقى حاضرة الذهن	coins	عملات معدنية	jingling	صوت رنين
pocket	جيب	share	يتشارك	deep breath	نفس عميق

Unit 2

collect	يجمع	old stories	قصص قديمة	plant	يزرع
clean	ينظف	Nubia	النوبة	help	يساعد
galabeyas	جلاليب	feed	يطعم	traditional outfits	أزياء تقليدية
volunteer	يتطوع	events	أحداث	community	مجتمع
history	تاريخ	turbans	عمائم	trash	قمامة
bins	صناديق قمامة	trees	أشجار	culture	ثقافة
decorations	زخارف	the Delta	الدلتا	pottery	فخار
give	يعطي	north	الشمال	neighbors	جيران
Upper Egypt	صعيد مصر	neighborhood	حي	community park	حديقة مجتمعية
south	الجنوب	diary	مذكرة	clothes	ملابس
traditions	عادات	train station	محطة القطار	celebrate	يحتفل
specially	خاصه	Spring Festival	مهرجان الربيع	problems	مشاكل
sugar cane harvest	حصاد قصب السكر	stalls	أكشاك	colorful carpets	سجاد ملون

Unit 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We all have senses.
a) three b) four c) five d) six
- 2 People with their tongue.
a) taste b) feed c) drink d) play
- 3 I smoke, I think there is a fire.
a) hear b) smell c) taste d) touch
- 4 Noha her teeth when she wakes up.
a) washes b) brushes c) tastes d) sees
- 5 I sleep at 9:00 p.m. every day. This means that I go to bed to stay healthy.
a) early b) late c) quickly d) slowly
- 6 Getting enough sleep helps your mind stay
a) fit b) sharp c) clean d) colorful
- 7 Ahmed was hungry. He didn't have money to buy
a) food b) gifts c) water d) juice
- 8 Mounir is He wants more money than he needs.
a) kind b) nice c) traditional d) greedy
- 9 Mona and Amal always lunch. They eat together.
a) cut b) share c) collect d) organize
- 10 Omar and Nadia walked for a long time in the forest, they found a place to rest.
a) slowly b) loudly c) finally d) first

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A sharp – five – smell – see – safe

The human body is amazing. We have (1)..... senses. We can (2) with our eyes and touch with our hands. Our senses help us stay (3) If we get enough sleep, this will keep our minds (4)..... .

B greedy – market – coins – share – smelled

Omar went to the (1)..... to buy some fruit. He had five shiny (2) in his pocket. He saw a (3) man who did not want to (4) his food with others.

Unit 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 To keep the streets clean, we need to trash.
a) collect b) throw c) give d) put
- 2 more trees will help our community.
a) Removing b) Planting c) Leaving d) Cutting
- 3 It's nice to old people.
a) share b) give c) collect d) help
- 4 Reem at her neighborhood every summer to pick up trash.
a) gives b) runs c) volunteers d) plays
- 5 Karim the cats and dogs in the street.
a) gives b) supports c) plays d) feeds
- 6 You can't throw trash on the
a) traffic b) problem c) ground d) solution
- 7 We need to keep our community
a) clean b) dirty c) responsible d) trash
- 8 are traditional outfits in Egypt.
a) Pants b) Shorts c) Galabeyas d) Vests
- 9 People should put the trash in the
a) street b) bin c) river d) park
- 10 Egypt has many festivals.
a) traditional b) sharp c) neighborhood d) food

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A sugar cane – celebrates – weave – traditional – Spring Festival

Egypt (1) many festivals. In Upper Egypt, people celebrate the (2) harvest with big festivals, where they make pottery and (3) colorful carpets. Families sing (4) songs and tell old stories.

B volunteer – bins – collect – clean – dirty

We love our community, this is why we need to keep it (1) We should (2) at our community park. I (3) trash. Last week, we put many (4), so people don't throw trash on the ground.

Units 1 and 2



B) Revision on Grammar

Units 1 and 2

The Present Simple Tense

- We use the present simple tense to talk about daily habits and routines.
يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن العادات اليومية والروتين.

Affirmative form:

صيغة الإثبات:

I/ We/ They/ You + (inf.) (الفعل في المصدر) ...

e.g. Some children **play** sports after school.

He/ She/ It + (inf.) (الفعل في المصدر) s / es / ies ...

e.g. She **wakes up** early every day.

- معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (s):

play → plays

e.g. He **plays** football every day.

- الأفعال المنتهية بـ (ss/sh/ch/o/x/z)، يضاف لها (es):

brush → brushes

e.g. She **brushes** her teeth every day.

- الأفعال المنتهية بـ (y) مسبوقاً بحرف ساكن، يحذف الـ (y) ويضاف لها (ies):

carry → carries

e.g. She **carries** her backpack every day.

Negative Form:

صيغة النفي:

I/ We/ They/ You + don't (do not) + (inf) (الفعل في المصدر) ...

e.g. Cars **don't move** quickly in the morning.

(He/ She/ It) + doesn't (does not) + (inf) (الفعل في المصدر) ...

e.g. She **doesn't need** to use cars every day.

Yes/No Question:

السؤال بـ (هل):

Question	Do	I/ you/ we/ they	...? (الفعل في المصدر (inf.))
السؤال	Does	he/ she/ it	
Answer	Yes,	subject	do / does.
الإجابة	No,		don't / doesn't.

e.g. A: Do you **know** how to solve the problem? B: Yes, I do. / No, I don't.

e.g. A: Does your street **have** this problem? B: Yes, it does. / No, it doesn't.



Unit 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 A farmer a lot of vegetables every year.
a) growing b) grows c) is grows d) grow
- 2 What do you usually on the weekends?
a) play b) playing c) to play d) plays
- 3 He as a guide. He works in the tourism industry.
a) working b) works c) is work d) work
- 4 She to drink.
a) need b) needs c) is need d) needed
- 5 A good teacher students learn.
a) is help b) helping c) help d) helps
- 6 Teachers for many hours.
a) works b) working c) work d) is working
- 7 Sara being a nurse.
a) likes b) liking c) to like d) liked
- 8 They to the cinema.
a) goes b) going c) to go d) go
- 9 My mom always bright colors .
a) like b) likes c) liking d) to like
- 10 Lara tennis.
a) playing b) is played c) is play d) plays
- 11 Hoda hard enough every day.
a) don't train b) doesn't train c) didn't train d) to train
- 12 I traveling by bus.
a) doesn't like b) am not like c) not liking d) don't like
- 13 Amr to school by car. He takes the bus.
a) didn't go b) isn't go c) doesn't go d) don't go
- 14 she like to travel in the summer?
a) Is b) Does c) Do d) Don't
- 15 Adam often magazines in the morning ..
a) reads b) reading c) read d) to read

- 16 I to the club on weekends.
 a) goes b) is going c) gone d) go
- 17 I cucumbers with cheese.
 a) don't eat b) eat c) eats d) doesn't eat
- 18 They go to the cinema.
 a) doesn't b) don't c) isn't d) aren't
- 19 she like to be a volunteer?
 a) Does b) Do c) Is d) Were
- 20 What they want to do?
 a) do b) does c) is d) are

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 Salem (grew) lemon.
- 2 They (sells) fresh fish at the market.
- 3 She (going) swimming on Fridays .
- 4 Eman (cooking) in her free time.
- 5 Hana (to like) drawing pictures.
- 6 Ali (live) in Hurghada.
- 7 My sister (watch) a movie every day.
- 8 They (works) as guides.
- 9 He (work) as a teacher in my school.
- 10 She (like) eating pizza.
- 11 Salem (isn't) grow lemon trees.
- 12 They (not) enjoy this movie.
- 13 She (not go) to the club with her friends.
- 14 (Does) Ahmed and Sara watch television at night?
- 15 Sahar (not enjoy) watching movies.
- 16 (Does) you visit your grandparents on weekends?
- 17 My sister (not like) cartoons.
- 18 They (doesn't eat) fish.
- 19 (Do) she have her book?
- 20 Ahmed (play) football 3 times a week.

Units 3 and 4



A) Revision on Vocabulary

Unit 3

lion	أسد	pets	حيوانات أليفة	birds	طيور
monkey	قرد	challenges	تحديات / صعوبات	catch	يمسك / يصطاد
elephant	فيل	forest rangers	حراس الغابة	endangered	مهدد بالانقراض
giraffe	زرافة	safe	آمن	habitats	موطن / بيئة
zebra	حمار وحشي	special care	عناية خاصة	species	فصائل / أنواع
bear	دب	owners	الملاك (أصحاب الشيء)	pollution	التلوث
trunk	خرطوم	forest officers	حراس الغابة	gentle	لطيف
tail	ذيل	hunt	يصطاد	sea grass	أعشاب بحرية
striped	مخطط	pretend	يدعى / يتظاهر	fishing nets	شباك الصيد
coat	معطف (فرو الحيوانات)	fox	ثعلب	safe areas	مناطق آمنة
fur	فرو	trick	خدعة	amazing	مذهل
claws	مخالب	lie down	يستلقي	disappear	يختفي / ينقرض
spotted	منقط	footprints	آثار أقدام	learn	يتعلم
thick	كثيف	cave	كهف	Arabian Leopard	النمر العربي
forest park	متنزه غابي	wise	حكيم	dugong	الأطوم
forest guide	مرشد سياحي في الغابة	mistakes	أخطاء	sharp	حاد
jungle land	أرض الغابة	surface	سطح	close	قريب
vets	أطباء بيطريين	fluffy	رقيق / منقوش	laugh	يضحك

Unit 4

The Pyramids	الأهرامات	teachers	معلمون	hospital	مستشفى
Nile River	نهر النيل	nurses	ممرضون	museum	متحف
Cairo Tower	برج القاهرة	doctors	أطباء	city	مدينة
Siwa Oasis	واحة سيوة	students	طلاب	The Egyptian Museum	المتحف المصري
letters	خطابات	Khan Al-Khalili Bazaar	بازار خان الخليلي	restaurants	مطاعم
tour guide	مرشد سياحي	adventure	مغامرة	tourists	سياح
old monastery	دير قديم	treasures	كنوز (تحف)	colorful rocks	صخور ملونة
history	تاريخ	palm trees	نخل	gifts	هدايا
daytime	النهار	library	مكتبة	night time	الليل
school	مدرسة	dates	بلح	shopping mall	مول تجاري
post office	مكتب بريد				



Practice

on Vocabulary Units 3 and 4

Unit 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The works in the forest park.
a) tour guide b) farmer c) forest guide d) engineer
- 2 The elephant uses its to spray water.
a) trunk b) mouth c) tail d) ear
- 3 are doctors who save animals' lives.
a) Forest guides b) Engineers c) Vets d) Forest officers
- 4 The has thick fur and sharp claws. It can catch fish.
a) giraffe b) zebra c) monkey d) bear
- 5 Lions live in
a) houses b) hotels c) caves d) nests
- 6 The player faced in the final match. It was hard.
a) needs b) challenges c) changes d) rangers
- 7 We followed the of a deer and found it.
a) footprints b) holes c) mistakes d) feet
- 8 Animals should live in areas.
a) safe b) dangerous c) dark d) small
- 9 A is a place where animals live and people come to visit them.
a) hospital b) bazaar c) cave d) forest park
- 10 She to be sick. she wouldn't go to school. She was feeling fine.
a) suggested b) needed c) made d) pretended

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A daily – safe – vet – animals – tail

My father loves (1)..... very much. He works as a (2)..... . He once saved a cat's life when it was sick. The cat's (3)..... was hurt badly but he helped it. Owners should give their pets (4)..... care.

B care – move – endangered – cages – walk

Animals are at risk of becoming (1).....; that's why we should protect them. Elephants should have a wide space to (2)..... around freely. Birds should live in clean (3)..... . Animals need special (4)..... .

Unit 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Egypt is known to have the river which is called the Nile River.
a) longest b) tallest c) widest d) biggest
- 2 The is one of the most famous buildings to visit in Egypt.
a) Siwa Oasis b) Cairo Tower c) Khan Al-Khalili d) Nile River
- 3 Mr. Ahmed is a good; he explains lessons really well in class.
a) vet b) doctor c) librarian d) teacher
- 4 My friend told me about the that makes delicious food.
a) restaurant b) club c) store d) shop
- 5 Mayar visited Khan Al-Khalili bazaar to buy for her friends.
a) clothes b) gifts c) books d) posters
- 6 work in hospitals and save people's lives.
a) Officers b) Doctors c) Teachers d) Guides
- 7 We visited the Egyptian Museum to learn about
a) math b) English c) mountains d) history
- 8 I borrowed new books from the new that opened last week.
a) library b) shopping mall c) school d) store
- 9 I wanted to buy new shoes, so I went to the
a) restaurant b) library c) museum d) shopping mall.
- 10 Amr went to the to send some packages.
a) shop b) post office c) hospital d) restaurant

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A camel – fun – museum – Pyramids – bazaar

Last summer, my cousin who lives in London visited Egypt. I took him to see the (1)..... We rode a (2)..... there and we took lots of pictures. Then, we went to Khan Al-Khalili (3)..... to buy some gifts for his friends when he goes home. We had a great time together. It was (4).....

B mall – park – hospital – post office – library

We moved to a new house last month. There is a (1)..... for people to go for walks and ride bikes. Next to my house, there's a new (2)..... that will open soon for people to shop and buy things. There is also a (3)..... where students can learn. You can find a (4)..... next to it. Many doctors work there.



Unit 3

Comparative Adjectives صفات المقارنة

short adjective + **er** + **than**

معظم الصفات القصيرة يضاف لها (er) ويعدها (than) : <i>e.g.</i> The cat is smaller than the dog.	الصفات المنتهية بـ (e)، يضاف لها (r) ويعدها (than) : <i>e.g.</i> The house is larger than the apartment.
الصفات المنتهية بـ (y) مسبوقة بحرف ساكن، يحذف الـ (y) ويضاف لها (ier) ويعدها (than) : <i>e.g.</i> The box is heavier than the bag.	الصفات المنتهية بحرف ساكن (يسبقه حرف متحرك)، يضاعف الحرف الساكن، ثم يضاف لها (er) ويعدها (than). <i>e.g.</i> Summer is hotter than spring.

Unit 4

Prepositions of Place حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان



in
في / داخل



on
على



in front of
أمام



behind
خلف



next to
بجوار



between
بين



Unit 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The snake is than the elephant.
a) thin b) thinner c) thinnest d) the thinner
- 2 Turtles are than rabbits.
a) slower b) slowest c) slow d) the slowest
- 3 I think people are than robots.
a) nice b) nicer c) nicest d) the nicest
- 4 The elephant is bigger the lion.
a) the b) than c) this d) that
- 5 The plane is than the train.
a) faster b) fast c) fastest d) more fast
- 6 The crocodile is the snake.
a) bigger b) a big c) bigger than d) biggest
- 7 Nagwa is than her sister.
a) short b) shortest c) the shorter d) shorter
- 8 The bear is the dog.
a) a strong b) stronger c) strong d) stronger than
- 9 That bird is than all other birds.
a) kinder b) a kind c) kind d) kindest
- 10 The fox is smaller the tiger.
a) that b) then c) than d) thin

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 Rabbits are (small) than camels.
- 2 The train is (fast) than the car.
- 3 The rose lives (long) than the daisy.
- 4 This movie is (funniest) than the one we saw last week.
- 5 Cats are weaker (then) lions.
- 6 A bird is (small) than a camel.
- 7 Hanaa is (smart) than her sister Reem.
- 8 The River Nile is (longest) than the Red Sea.
- 9 Ali is (tall) than Adam.
- 10 Today is (cold) than yesterday.

Unit 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 My house is the red house and the orange house.
a) under b) next c) between d) across
- 2 The tent is the car.
a) next to b) in front c) between d) next
- 3 The cat is sleeping the white couch.
a) on b) next c) in d) between
- 4 My school is of the hospital.
a) next b) in front c) under d) behind
- 5 The dog is hiding the door.
a) next b) behind c) between d) in
- 6 My toys are the toy box.
a) in b) between c) in front d) next
- 7 The post office is next the bank.
a) on b) to c) of d) in
- 8 There is a new clock the wall.
a) next b) between c) on d) in front
- 9 The pencil case is my school bag.
a) of b) in c) to d) at
- 10 A: Where is the supermarket? B: It is to the school.
a) in front b) next c) behind d) between

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 The school is in front (to) the public library.
- 2 The bird is singing (of) the tree branch.
- 3 The couch is (in) two chairs.
- 4 The apple is (between) the table.
- 5 The couch is (front) to the window.
- 6 My school is next (two) the park.
- 7 The park is (under) the school and hospital.
- 8 There is a TV (in) the table.
- 9 The shopping mall is (next) of Mona's house.
- 10 She is sitting (behind) to the door.

Units 5 and 6



A) Revision on Vocabulary

Unit 5

doctor	طبيب	nurse	ممرضة	teacher	مدرسة
engineer	مهندس	firefighter	رجل إطفاء	mentor	موجه
keys	مفاتيح	police officer	ضابط شرطة	brave	شجاع
origami	فن طي الورق	wildlife photographer	مصور الحياة البرية	regret	ندم
uniform	زى موحد	own	خاص	voice-over actor	مؤدى صوتي
carpenter	نجار	faraway	بعيد	furniture	أثاث
nail	مسمار	fire station	محطة إطفاء	fire truck	سيارة إطفاء
wooden	خشب	protective uniform	زى واقى	crooked	معوج / غير مستقيم
promise	يوعد	shock	صدمة / ذهول	danger	خطر
tools	أدوات	water hoses	خراطيم مياة	ladders	سلالم
oxygen tanks	أسطوانات أكسجين	saving lives	إنقاذ الأرواح	proud	فخور

Unit 6

dress	فستان	closet	خزانة ملابس
playground	فناء / ملعب	competition	مسابقة
drawings	رسومات	medal	ميدالية
sign	توقيع	letter	خطاب
announce	يعلن	winner	الفائز



Unit 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 My uncle is a/an; he designs buildings.
a) firefighter b) police officer c) carpenter d) engineer
- 2 A carpenter makes from wood.
a) carpets b) tables c) cars d) coats
- 3 A/An helps doctors at the hospital.
a) nurse b) firefighter c) teacher d) mentor
- 4 As a wildlife photographer, I take many pictures of
a) animals b) toys c) people d) houses
- 5 The fire is ringing, there must be a fire.
a) bell b) alarm c) door d) phone
- 6 The brave saved people from the big fire.
a) doctor b) firefighter c) nurse d) patient
- 7 I can make voices for cartoons, my dream is to become a/an when I grow up.
a) police officer b) teacher c) nurse d) voice-over actor
- 8 Gardeners use to water the plants.
a) hoses b) wood c) hammers d) nails
- 9 My father needs to hang a picture on the wall.
a) fires b) nails c) alarms d) hoses
- 10 This carpenter is very He makes amazing furniture.
a) brave b) poor c) skilled d) weak

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A

right – protective – equipment – safe – danger

My uncle, Hazem is a firefighter at a local fire station. He wears a thick (1)..... uniform with bright yellow stripes and a heavy helmet to keep him (2)..... . Every day at the station, he checks his (3)..... and keeps the big red fire truck ready. He also makes sure everything is clean and in the (4)..... place.

B

skilled – nails – wooden – tools – hoses

Our window was broken last Saturday, so we called a carpenter to come and fix it. He came with lots of (1)..... . He had a set of (2)..... and hammers. It took him an hour to make us a new (3)..... window. This carpenter is very (4)..... .



Unit 5

Superlative Adjectives

Use superlative adjectives to show the greatest degree of something.

تستخدم صفات التفضيل لتظهر أعلى درجة من شيء ما.

Short adjectives: الصفات القصيرة

- عند التفضيل بين أكثر من شيئين باستخدام الصفات القصيرة (ذات المقطع الواحد)، نضع "the" قبل الصفة القصيرة ويضاف لها "est".
- لاحظ الصفات الآتية عند إضافة الـ "est".

the + short adjective + est الصفة القصيرة + est



معظم الصفات القصيرة يضاف لها (est):

fast → the fastest

tall → the tallest

e.g. This is the tallest tree in the park.



الصفات المنتهية بـ (e) يضاف لها (st) فقط:

safe → the safest

nice → the nicest

e.g. Mona is the nicest friend I have.



الصفات المنتهية بـ (y) يسبقه حرف

ساكن، يحذف (y) ويضاف لها (iest):

happy → happiest

heavy → heaviest

e.g. Nora is the happiest girl.



الصفات المنتهية بحرف (ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك)، يضاعف الحرف الساكن

ويضاف (est):

big → biggest

hot → hottest

e.g. These are the biggest lions in the zoo.



Unit 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Ashraf was the firefighter. He saved so many people from the big fire.
a) brave b) braver c) bravest d) bravery
- 2 Sahar is the one in her office.
a) shorter b) short c) shorter than d) shortest
- 3 Hadeer is in the group.
a) the smart b) the smarter c) smartest d) the smartest
- 4 This year, English is the subject. I enjoy it very much.
a) easier b) easiest c) easy d) ease
- 5 My brother got high grades. This made him
a) happiest b) happy c) happier d) the happy
- 6 He is the player on the team.
a) faster b) fastest c) fast d) faster than
- 7 August is the month in the year.
a) hotter b) hot c) hottest d) hotter than
- 8 It's the movie I've seen in a while.
a) scare b) scary c) scarier d) scariest
- 9 Eman is girl in the class.
a) tall b) taller c) tallest d) the tallest.
- 10 My school is the school in the town.
a) big b) bigger c) biggest d) bigger than

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 Monday is the (busier) day of the week.
- 2 Burj Khalifa is (tall) building in the world.
- 3 Those were the (pretty) flowers she had ever seen.
- 4 Turtles are the (slow) animals.
- 5 The Nile River is the (longer) river.
- 6 Elephants are (the bigger) animals.
- 7 I think science is the (hard) subject this year.
- 8 Nour is three months old. She is the (young) in the family.
- 9 December is (the cold) month in the year.
- 10 Mount Everest is the (high) mountain in the world.



Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
talk	يتحدث	talked	stay	يمكث	stayed
smell	يشم	smelled	check	يفحص	checked
touch	يلمس	touched	protect	يحمي	protected
use	يستخدم	used	reach	يصل	reached
taste	يتذوق	tasted	face	يواجه	faced
promise	يوعد	promised	create	يخلق / يُوجد	created
follow	يتبع	followed	pretend	يدعى / يتظاهر	pretended
help	يساعد	helped	call out	ينادي	called out
brush	يغسل بالفرشاة	brushed	reply	يرد / يجيب	replied
enjoy	يستمتع	enjoyed	die	يموت	died
walk	يمشي	walked	disappear	يختفي / ينقرض	disappeared
ask	يسأل	asked	stop	يتوقف / يوقف	stopped
laugh	يضحك	laughed	remain	يبقى / يظل	remained
study	يذاكر	studied	act	يتحرك (يقوم بفعل)	acted
include	يتضمن	included	visit	يزور	visited
need	يحتاج	needed	borrow	يقترض	borrowed
solve	يحل (مشكلة)	solved	design	يصمم	designed
discuss	يناقش	discussed	save	ينقذ	saved
fix	يصلح	fixed	care	يعني	cared
reduce	يقلل	reduced	climb	يتسلق	climbed
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated	wait	ينتظر	waited
weave	يغزل	wove	admire	يُعجب بـ	admired
share	يتشارك	shared	retire	يتقاعد	retired
work	يعمل	worked	turn	يتحول / يتغير	turned
paint	يدهن	painted	repair	يُصلح	repaired
love	يحب	loved	rest	يستريح	rested
hammer	يدق (المسمار)	hammered	agree	يوافق	agreed
cycle	يركب الدراجة	cycled	fit	يناسب / يلائم	fitted

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
hear	يسمع	heard	sing	يغنى	sang
see	يرى	saw	stand	يبقى	stood
understand	يفهم	understood	run	يجرى	ran
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up	catch	يمسك	caught
give	يعطى	gave	eat	يأكل	ate
grow	يزرع/ينمو	grew	make	يصنع	made
take	يأخذ	took	teach	يدرس	taught
sit	يجلس	sat	lie down	يستلقى	lay down
think	يفكر	thought	meet	يقابل	met
shake	يهز	shook	has/have	لديه	had
pay	يدفع	paid	ride	يركب	rode
take out	يخرج	took out	buy	يشترى	bought
come	يأتى	came	read	يقرأ	read
tell	يخبر	told	send	يرسل	sent
keep	يحافظ على	kept	bring	يحضّر	brought
feel	يشعر	felt	grow up	يكبر	grew up
leave	يترك	left	find	يجد	found
fight	يقاتل / يكافح	fought	ring	يرن	rang
wear	يرتدى	wore	sell	يبيع	sold
build	يبني	built	put on	يرتدى	put on

Final Tests

Test 1

30



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Nour wakes up every day at am.
a) 5 b) 6 c) 7 d) 9
- 2 Nour brushes her before going to school.
a) hair b) teeth c) car d) bus
- 3 She always eats food.
a) unhealthy b) fast c) healthy d) bad
- 4 She lots of water.
a) eats b) runs c) studies d) drinks



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 The street looks so because there is trash.
a) fresh b) clean c) dirty d) empty
- 2 Men wear clothes in Upper Egypt like galabeyas.
a) traditional b) modern c) healthy d) delicious

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

climb – history – rocks – popular – nature

South Sinai is an amazing land in Egypt. Saint Catherine is a (1) mountain in South Sinai. People visit it from all over the world and (2) it. On your way to the top, you can see lots of colorful (3) You can visit it to learn about the (4) of the place.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

5

Mona loves animals so much. She wanted to have a pet and taking care of it. When she passed her exams, her parents got her a small cat that she named Lulu. Lulu had bright green eyes and white hair with a fluffy tail. Mona's parents told her to be responsible for the cat. Mona feeds it every day and takes it to the vet weekly to get it checked on. Pet owners should be like Mona.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Mona's parents got her a when she passed her exams.
a) dog b) cat c) bird d) turtle
- 2 Mona takes her cat to the vet every to get her checked on.
a) month b) year c) day d) week

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 How does Mona take care of her cat?
- 4 What does Lulu look like?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

- 1 (Does) you have a pen?
- 2 This box is (smallest) than the one I lost.
- 3 I found my bag (in) the table where I left it.
- 4 This is the (tiny) pot she has.

6 Punctuate the following:

2

do you have a pen

7 Write a paragraph of about (18- 24) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"My community"

park – school – post office

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 We should all work together to keep our community
 a) clean b) dirty c) dangerous d) fresh
- 2 We can put trash in many places.
 a) pins b) bins c) plates d) cups
- 3 We can more trees in the park.
 a) buy b) remove c) plant d) run
- 4 We can to collect clothes.
 a) keep b) volunteer c) stay d) play



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 The cartoon uses for characters to talk.
 a) nurses b) teachers
 c) doctors d) voice-over actors
- 2 Many animals are in danger of forever.
 a) running b) disappearing c) saving d) guiding

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

library – firefighters – smoke – alarm – bell

Last week, Soha was at school with her friends. She heard the fire (1) ring loudly. There was a big fire in the (2) next to the school. They saw big clouds of (3) Then, the (4) came quickly and saved everyone.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

5

In a quiet village, a skilled carpenter named Hesham spent his days shaping wood with care. One winter, an old woman asked him to build a baby's bed. Using his finest tools, he hammered each nail with care. When she saw it, she was very happy. "It's cool," she said. That bed, built with love and skilled hands, became a gift that makes the family remember the skilled carpenter.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Hesham works as a
a) doctor b) teacher c) carpenter d) vet
- 2 Hesham used to make the bed.
a) nails b) gold c) water d) roses

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What did the woman ask Hesham to do?
- 4 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

- 1 My dog runs (fast) than Jana's dog.
- 2 Dalia (don't go) to school by car.
- 3 The shopping mall is (next) of the post office.
- 4 Doctors (helping) sick people in hospitals.

6 Punctuate the following:

2

where is the post office

7 Write a paragraph of about (18- 24) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"Your favorite animal"

pet – small – play

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 Mona thinks we should care for animals (للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)
- a) daily b) monthly c) yearly d) weekly
- 2 Mona with her cat every day.
- a) plays b) sleeps c) respects d) owns
- 3 Ronnie has thick hair.
- a) brown b) white c) gray d) black
- 4 Ronnie has a fluffy tail.
- a) short b) tall c) long d) small



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 Maha asked her for advice to become brave.
- a) mentor b) firefighter
- c) wildlife photographer d) nurse
- 2 The Grand Egyptian includes many treasures that teach us about history.
- a) Tower b) Oasis c) Museum d) Office

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

trees – palm – lake – delicious – sand

Welcome to Siwa Oasis, where you can swim and take amazing photos. Siwa Oasis has a famous (1) that you can swim in. It has many (2) and water. Tourists enjoy going there. You can get (3) dates there. Siwa Oasis is also famous for its (4) trees.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

5

To stop traffic jams, people use buses and trains instead of cars. Students should take the school bus instead of going by cars. People should avoid driving every day if possible. Using bicycles or walking for short trips is another smart idea. With better planning, traffic can move faster and roads can be safer. This will help make the streets less crowded and the air less polluted.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Students should take the to school.
a) train b) car c) bike d) bus
- 2 "Smart idea" means that the idea is
a) good b) terrible c) boring d) fast

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Why should people use buses and trains?
- 4 How can we avoid air pollution?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

- 1 The keys are (in) the table.
- 2 She (not like) coffee.
- 3 The bike is smaller (then) the bus.
- 4 Reem (drinking) plenty of water every day.

6 Punctuate the following:

2

i want to be a teacher

7 Write a paragraph of about (18- 24) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"My house"

city – next to – clean

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Maya, a kind works in a special club.
a) doctor b) nurse c) teacher d) mentor
- 2 She taught young, children fun games.
a) shy b) smart c) brave d) small
- 3 The children learned to ideas.
a) touch b) teach c) speak d) share
- 4 The children didn't feel to talk.
a) brave b) afraid c) greedy d) sick



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 I could the cake that my mom.
a) feel b) smell c) buy d) drink
- 2 The checked my dog to make sure it was healthy.
a) teacher b) mentor c) vet d) officer

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

reading – visiting – borrow – library – next

My community is full of wonderful things. There is a new (1) that opened (2) to my home. I can (3) books from there. I like (4) about history. I enjoy reading before going to bed.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

5

The five senses help us understand the world around us. We use our eyes to see colors, shapes, and people. Our ears help us hear sounds like music, voices, and birds. With our nose, we smell flowers, food, and fresh air. Our tongue lets us taste sweet, salty, sour, and bitter flavors. Lastly, our skin helps us feel touch, like soft fabric or something hot. These senses work together, giving us important information every moment of the day.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We use our to see colors, shapes, and movement.
a) ears b) hands c) eyes d) tongue
- 2 We can hear with our ears.
a) music b) colors c) books d) flowers

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What do our ears help us do?
- 4 What do we taste with our tongue?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

- 1 There are many beautiful paintings (under) the gallery.
- 2 He (don't enjoy) working late hours.
- 3 She (study) French every Monday.
- 4 Nour runs (fast) than her brother.

6 Punctuate the following:

2

she likes baking
.....

7 Write a paragraph of about (18- 24) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"A job you like"

doctor – help – hospital
.....
.....
.....
.....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Sarah went to last month.

- a) Cairo Tower b) Siwa Oasis c) Khan Al-Khalili d) the Pyramids

2 Sarah swam in the

- a) Nile River b) Lake Nasser c) Red Sea d) Salt Lake

3 Sarah was when she went to the desert.

- a) terrible b) happy c) sad d) afraid

4 Sara said that it was a/an experience.

- a) amazing b) nice c) fun d) bad



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

1 The waited for hours to take a picture of the lion in its natural habitat.

- a) doctor b) voice-over actor
c) teacher d) wildlife photographer

2 The tourists visit the old in the mountains.

- a) monastery b) library c) park d) hospital

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

skilled – repair – hammered – table – carpenter

Uncle Karam is our neighbor. He works as a (1) He arrived early in the morning to fix the broken (2) He carefully looked at it and got his tools. Then, he began to (3) the legs of the table. Finally, he (4) the last nail in place and smiled at his work.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

5

Last weekend, I went on a trip to Saint Catherine in South Sinai. The mountains were tall and beautiful. I climbed the mountain early in the morning to watch the sunrise. It was cold, but the view was amazing. I also visited Saint Catherine's Monastery, which is very old and full of history. The people were kind, and the food was tasty. I took many photos. It was a peaceful trip, and I will never forget it.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The were tall and beautiful.
a) streets b) photos c) towers d) mountains
- 2 Saint Catherine's Monastery is full of
a) history b) animals c) shops d) restaurants

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Why did the writer climb the mountain in the morning?
- 4 What else did the writer visit?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

- 1 This exam is (hard) than the last one.
- 2 She (play) the guitar every evening.
- 3 (Does) you usually cook dinner at home?
- 4 The café is (in front of) the bank and the restaurant.

6 Punctuate the following:

2

Siwa oasis has excellent olive oil

7 Write a paragraph of about (18- 24) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"How to be healthy"
exercise – sharp – early

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 A new opened in our community.
a) hospital b) post office c) library d) school
- 2 You can books for a week.
a) borrow b) sell c) collect d) return
- 3 There are places to sit and read your favorite book.
a) loud b) quiet c) high d) old
- 4 The library is with lots of spaces.
a) small b) slow c) big d) empty



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 Amir is He does his work very well.
a) skilled b) bad c) fun d) sad
- 2 There is a from where I can send letters.
a) shop b) post office c) library d) restaurant

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

forest park – forest guard – elephant – tail – trunk

Tourists like to visit lots of places. The (1) attracts lots of them. It has lots of animals. The (2) looks after all the animals. He always sees the big (3) moving around. It's amazing how it uses its long (4) to spray itself with water.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

5

Khan Al Khalili is a famous bazaar in Cairo, Egypt. I went there last Friday with my family. The market was full of small shops selling, clothes, and handmade gifts. We saw beautiful lamps and colorful scarves. The smell of spices and coffee filled the air. People were friendly, and some played music in the streets. We sat at a small café and drank tea. It was a fun and exciting place with lots to see and enjoy.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The text is about a
 a) street b) bazaar c) restaurant d) hospital
- 2 The shops sold
 a) food b) drinks c) gifts d) fruit

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What did they see?
- 4 How did the writer feel after the visit?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

- 1 The Grand Egyptian Museum is the (big) museum in Giza.
- 2 The weather today is (hottest) than yesterday.
- 3 She (not enjoy) waiting for so long.
- 4 (Does) you understand this question?

6 Punctuate the following:

2

hend plays volleyball

7 Write a paragraph of about (18- 24) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"My school"

teachers – English – clean

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 The checked our tickets.
 a) guide b) forest officer c) doctor d) teacher
- 2 The told us about all the animals in the park.
 a) forest guide b) tour guide c) nurse d) vet
- 3 We watched a family of moving between the trees.
 a) zebras b) lions c) elephants d) monkeys
- 4 We saw zebras in groups.
 a) walking b) jumping c) eating d) running



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 Lubna saw her grandma a colorful blanket.
 a) build b) play c) weave d) pretend
- 2 The bell on the cat's neck made a sound when it moved.
 a) jingling b) playing c) doing d) running

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

greedy – restaurant – coins – buy – share

The teacher told us a story about Ramy and his friend. They both went to an expensive (1) to have lunch. Ramy was counting his (2) to pay for the food. His friend came with him but he was (3) and didn't want to (4) his food with him. Soon, he spilled his water on his food and felt really sad.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

5

There was a greedy shop owner in a small town. He always wanted more money and never helped anyone. He sold old things at high prices and lied to his customers. One day, people stopped buying from his shop because they didn't trust **يثق** him. His store became empty **فارغ** and quiet. The shop owner felt sad and alone. He finally learned that being kind and honest is better than being greedy. From that day on, he changed and treated people well.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The shop owner sold things at high prices.
a) smart b) kind c) nice d) greedy
- 2 The man's store became
a) quiet b) sad c) loud d) terrible

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Why did the people stop buying from the shop?
- 4 What did the shop owner learn from the story?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

- 1 The Khan Al-Khalili market is the (**busy**) souk in Cairo.
- 2 Exploring the desert by camel is funnier (**then**) going by cars.
- 3 Many locals (**enjoys**) their evenings along the Corniche.
- 4 (**Do**) the sound and light show at the Pyramids start at sunset?

6 Punctuate the following:

2

i can speak english and Arabic.

7 Write a paragraph of about (18- 24) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"A trip to the museum"

history – treasures – bazaar

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 The Arabian Leopard lives in the
 a) mountains b) deserts c) seas d) a & b
- 2 The Arabian Leopard has beautiful
 a) fur b) coat c) hair d) spots
- 3 The Arabian Leopard is in great
 a) danger b) safety c) dangerous d) safe
- 4 People are working hard to these special animals.
 a) respect b) protect c) pollute d) remove



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 Mai bought a for her friend's birthday.
 a) nail b) gift c) key d) letter
- 2 We should put trash in a to keep the area clean.
 a) sign b) bin c) cup d) street

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

hospital – doctor – engineer – nurses – patients

I love my family very much, especially my father. He works as a (1)
 He goes to (2) every day at 6 am. Some (3) help him look
 after people. He checks on the health of the (4) every day to give
 them the best care.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

5

Last weekend, I volunteered in a park near my home. Many people came to help. We picked up trash, planted flowers, and painted benches. The park looked much cleaner and more beautiful after we finished. It felt good to do something nice for the community. Children were happy to play in a clean place. I also made new friends while working. Volunteering in the park was fun and helpful, and I want to do it again soon.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The writer picked up
 a) flowers b) trash c) clothes d) toys
- 2 Children were happy to play in a place.
 a) clean b) dirty c) cold d) nice

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What activities did the volunteers do to make the park look better?
- 4 Why is volunteering in the park a good thing for the community?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

- 1 The Great Pyramid of Giza is the (large) ancient structure in Egypt.
- 2 The sound and light show at the Pyramids is more popular than the one at Karnak Temple.
- 3 Many locals (doesn't visit) the Egyptian Museum regularly, despite living close by.
- 4 (Do) the new museum have special exhibitions this month?

6 Punctuate the following:

2

horses are more beautiful than camels

7 Write a paragraph of about (18- 24) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"Different jobs"

teacher — engineers — vets

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 A fire rang loudly.
a) bell b) alarm c) clock d) arm
- 2 The put on his oxygen tank.
a) doctor b) patient c) teacher d) firefighter
- 3 He used a to reach the flames.
a) ladder b) nail c) hammer d) box
- 4 The firefighter showed everyone that he was
a) strong b) smart c) brave d) shy



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 Hanaa works with and uses them to tell stories.
a) puppets b) books c) dresses d) plants
- 2 The carpenter used to fix the broken chair.
a) windows b) nails c) tables d) dresses

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

teach – create – endangered – protect – pollution

Animals are at risk of disappearing. The Red Sea Dugong is an (1) animal in Egypt. To help these animals, we must (2) their homes. We also need to stop (3) We need to (4) people how to look after animals.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

5

One day, a small cat was hit by a car and left on the street. A kind vet saw the injured **مصاب** cat and quickly took it to his clinic. He cleaned the wounds **جروح**, gave the cat some medicine, and took care of it every day. Slowly, the cat got better and started to walk again. The vet was happy to see the cat healthy and strong. He later found a loving home for it. The cat was safe and happy again.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The cat was hit by a
 a) clinic b) car c) wound d) vet
- 2 The vet took care of the cat
 a) daily b) yearly c) weekly d) monthly

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 How did the vet help the injured cat get better?
- 4 Why is it important to help animals when they are hurt?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

- 1 The new museum's entrance hall is (**large**) than the previous one.
- 2 Many tourists (**not stay**) in Giza; they get around Cairo.
- 3 (**Do**) the sound and light show include a narration in Arabic?
- 4 There's usually a long line of visitors (**next**) of the ticket counter at peak hours.

6 Punctuate the following:

2

what do they want to do

7 Write a paragraph of about (18- 24) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"Elephants"

trunk – ears – gray



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Gigi is a/an tall

- a) lion b) zebra c) elephant d) giraffe

2 Gigi lives in

- a) America b) Africa c) Europe d) Asia

3 Gigi eats from high trees.

- a) leaves b) fruit c) vegetables d) meat

4 Gigi has all over its body.

- a) stripes b) hair c) sports d) spots



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

1 The new student was too to speak in the classroom. It was her first day.

- a) gray b) shy c) great d) focus

2 I forgot my so I couldn't open the door.

- a) book b) hammer c) shoes d) keys

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

lion – habitat – share – wildlife photographer – doctor

Omar wants to work as a (1) as he likes taking pictures of animals. He enjoys taking great photos in faraway places. He follows animals in their natural (2) He likes to (3) the beauty of the natural world with his friends through the pictures. He once waited for three hours to photograph a (4)

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

5

Rana moved to a new school last month. At first, she felt shy and nervous because everything was different. But her new English teacher was very kind and friendly. The teacher helped her feel welcome, and gave her easy work to start with. Rana began to enjoy the lessons and made new friends in class. She liked how her teacher smiled and explained things clearly. Now, Rana is happy at her new school and loves learning English every day.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Rana's new teacher was kind.
a) math b) science c) English d) Arabic
- 2 Rana feels now at the school.
a) happy b) sad c) funny d) terrible

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 How did Rana feel when she moved to a new school?
- 4 What does Rana like about her new teacher?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

- 1 The Great Pyramid is the (tall) of the three pyramids at Giza.
- 2 The Sphinx is (old) than the new museum.
- 3 Many local restaurants (doesn't close) before midnight during the summer.
- 4 Tourists often (rides) camels near the Giza Pyramids.

6 Punctuate the following:

2

doctors work in hospitals

7 Write a paragraph of about (18- 24) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"The new shopping mall"

stores – restaurants – buy

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 Noha walks to the every morning. (للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)
- a) park b) club c) school d) library
- 2 Noha the cats and dogs every day.
- a) plays b) feeds c) gives d) takes
- 3 Animals feel when they see Noha.
- a) bad b) sad c) terrible d) happy
- 4 Noha takes animals to the when they're injured or sick.
- a) nurse b) park c) vet d) home



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 We should use less cars to pollution.
- a) add b) stop c) give d) create
- 2 The new Hadeer went to has smart boards and computers.
- a) club b) house c) school d) hospital

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

sharp – healthy – early – exercises – clean

Amira is a smart girl. She knows that having (1) habits is an important thing. She wakes up (2) at 6:30 to brush her teeth. Before going to school, she (3) to keep fit. She walks to school and eats lots of vegetables. Amira goes to bed early, too. This keeps her mind (4)

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

5

In the Delta region of Egypt, people celebrate the Spring Festival with happiness. The fields are green and farmers grow rice and cotton. Families spend time together and eat special food and listen to music. Streets are filled with colorful decorations and flowers. Children wear new clothes that women make. It's a happy time for everyone there. The Spring Festival shows love for nature, farming and family. It's very beautiful and fun.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Farmers grow and cotton.
a) peppers b) mangoes c) rice d) tomatoes
- 2 Streets are filled with colorful and flowers.
a) decorations b) plants c) bells d) cars

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What do families do in the Spring Festival?
- 4 What do children wear during the Spring Festival?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

- 1 This is the (heavier) bag I carried.
- 2 She (practice) volleyball three times a week.
- 3 Wael (don't play) video games on weekends.
- 4 This classroom is (small) than the other one.

6 Punctuate the following:

2

he likes history

7 Write a paragraph of about (18- 24) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"Protecting animals"

stop pollution – clean areas – feed them

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Somaya received a last week.
a) package b) key c) bag d) pen
- 2 Somaya went to the to know who sent her the package.
a) club b) school c) hospital d) post office
- 3 The package was sent from
a) Aswan b) Ireland c) France d) Egypt
- 4 The package was a for Somaya's birthday.
a) gift b) food c) juice d) play



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 Elephants have big
a) necks b) tails c) legs d) ears
- 2 In the Delta, men sometimes wear traditional clothes like
a) suits b) T-shirts c) trousers d) turbans

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

red – striped – groups – small – big

Animals are amazing creatures and every animal is special. For example, zebras have (1) coats. They run in (2) Foxes are (3) animals. They have (4) brown fur.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

5

Menna loves making children smile. She works with puppets to tell fun and kind stories. Every week, she makes shows at schools and parks. Her puppets are colorful and funny. They teach kids good lessons like sharing, helping others, and being brave. Menna writes her own stories and makes the puppets talk and move. Children laugh and enjoy her shows. She loves using puppets to bring stories to life.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Menna works with to tell stories.
a) puppets b) nurses c) students d) engineers
- 2 Menna makes shows at
a) hospitals b) schools c) clubs d) houses

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What does Menna's stories teach kids?
- 4 Why does Menna love using puppets?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

- 1 Inji studies (hard) than her friends. She wants to get high grades.
- 2 (Does) you travel every summer?
- 3 Mariam (not prefer) eating fish.
- 4 Canada is the (cold) country I visited.

6 Punctuate the following:

2

where did you go last week

7 Write a paragraph of about (18- 24) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"Cleaning the community"

bins – trash – volunteer

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Omar has a voice.

- a) bad b) low c) nice d) big

2 Omar works as a

- a) teacher b) doctor
c) vet d) voice-over actor

3 Omar makes voices for large characters.

- a) soft b) loud c) small d) little

4 Omar wants to do voice-overs for

- a) cartoons b) movies c) plays d) shops



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

1 Fatma likes to roses.

- a) smell b) hear c) brush d) feed

2 Birds need to live in clean

- a) sea b) cages c) bags d) rivers

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

tall – oldest – see – Nile River – tower

Egypt has many beautiful places. For example, the Cairo Tower is one of the
(1) buildings in Cairo. The (2) is very tall. You can (3)
the whole of Egypt from the top. The (4) flows around it.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

5

Laila joined a group to help people in need. They asked friends and family to give old clothes away. Laila went from house to house with a big smile. She collected jackets, shirts and shoes. At the end of last week, they had many boxes full of clothes. Laila and her friends gave them to poor families. The children were very happy and Laila felt very proud. Helping others made her heart warm. She knew small acts can bring joy الفرح.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Laila joined a group to people in need.
a) get b) collect c) help d) run
- 2 Laila and her friends collected to give them to poor people.
a) clothes b) food c) drinks d) pins

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 How did Laila feel when she gave clothes to the poor?
- 4 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

- 1 The new shop opened (next) of the library.
- 2 Our city is one of the (old) cities.
- 3 The pyramid of Menkaure is smaller (that) the pyramid of Khafre.
- 4 Sarah (work) in a library.

6 Punctuate the following:

2

what is your favorite animal

7 Write a paragraph of about (18- 24) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"Endangered animals"

disappear – danger – protect

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 Egyptian traditions are and special. (للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)
- a) new b) big c) amazing d) old
- 2 People enjoy food.
- a) buying b) sharing c) getting d) cooking
- 3 Traditional music is full of
- a) joy b) sad c) dance d) cry
- 4 Men wear in Upper Egypt.
- a) formal b) turbans c) galabeyas d) shirts



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 A is someone who wears a uniform and a cap. He protects people.
- a) police officer b) vet c) nurse d) teacher
- 2 Don't trash on the streets. You should put them in bins.
- a) pick b) stay c) throw d) run

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

clean – dirty – Ancient – Nile River – grow

There are lots of rivers in the world. The (1) is the longest river in the world. Many people live next to it. The water helps (2) food. Long ago, the Nile helped the (3) Egyptians. Today, it is still important and loved, so we should keep it (4)

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

5

One day, a hungry fox found a piece of cheese. He was happy and wanted more. Soon, he saw a bird with bread. The greedy fox dropped the cheese and ran after the bird. The bird flew away and a dog took the cheese. Now, the fox didn't have food. He felt sad and angry. He lost all his food because he wanted more. The fox learned a lesson. Being greedy can make you lose everything.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The fox found a piece of , but he wanted more.
a) meat b) fish c) cheese d) apple
- 2 The fox ran after the
a) dog b) bird c) cat d) mouse

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Why did the fox run after the bird?
- 4 What is the lesson that the fox learned?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

- 1 The fox (have) red-brown fur.
- 2 Amr is the (quiet) in the office.
- 3 Youssef is (thin) than Karim.
- 4 She didn't see the cat. It was (on) the chair.

6 Punctuate the following:

2

she likes dogs

7 Write a paragraph of about (18- 24) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"Your dream job"

What do you want to do? – Where do you want to work? – Why do you want to do this job?

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

1 Ms. Reem is a

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- a) teacher b) mentor c) doctor d) nurse

2 Sarah was because she didn't know anyone.

- a) smart b) brave c) kind d) shy

3 Ms. Reem helped Sarah with others.

- a) play b) run c) speak d) learn

4 Now, Sarah is and has many friends.

- a) kind b) popular c) smart d) nice



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

1 wear blue uniform and help doctors.

- a) Vets b) Nurses c) Teachers d) Mentors

2 Firefighters use to put out fires.

- a) water hoses b) bins c) paper d) ice

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

doctor – Tower – design – engineer – roads

I always think about my dream job. I want to become a/an (1) like my elder sister. I see her (2) new buildings every day. She tells me about her job and how she likes it. Engineers also fix (3) The Cairo (4) was built by famous Egyptian Engineers.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

5

A baby giraffe named Zuzu had a short neck. The other giraffes had longer necks. They could reach tall trees. Zuzu felt sad and wanted a longer neck. One day she saw short trees full of her favorite leaves. The big giraffes could not reach them, but Zuzu could. She ate happily and shared with others. The big giraffes thanked her. Zuzu learned that being different is okay and that her short neck was special.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Zuzu had a neck.
a) tall b) short c) big d) small
- 2 Zuzu shared its favorite with other giraffes.
a) vegetables b) fruits c) leaves d) juice

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Why did Zuzu feel sad?
- 4 What did Zuzu learn?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

- 1 These mangoes are the (sweet) ones I bought.
- 2 (Do) he train basketball?
- 3 I'm (old) than Salma.
- 4 The train station is in front (to) the hospital.

6 Punctuate the following:

2

where is the bazaar

7 Write a paragraph of about (18- 24) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"Healthy habits"

eat vegetables – drink water – sleep early



Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

4.5

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 There is a (park – street – beach) where people can walk.
- 2 There is a (library – hospital – shopping mall) to borrow books.
- 3 The hospital is (behind – in – next) to the library.



Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words:

8

engineer – want – like – buildings

Reem : Dad, do you (1) your job?

Dad : Yes, I like being an (2)

Reem : What do you (3) in your job?

Dad : I design new (4)



Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

7.5

The Arabian Leopard is an Egyptian animal. It is in danger of disappearing forever. Many people are building houses in their habitats. We should protect these animals and create safe spaces for them.

A Answer the following questions:

- 1 Why is the Arabian Leopard in danger of disappearing forever?
- 2 How can we protect the Arabian Leopard?

B Choose the correct answer:

- 3 The Arabian Leopard lives in (Egypt – England – France).
- 4 We should (endanger – hunt – protect) these animals.
- 5 People are building (clubs – houses – parks) in the animals' habitats.



Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer:

5

- 1 The mouse is (smallest – smaller – small) than the elephant.
- 2 The park is next (in – from – to) the museum.
- 3 We go to the (hospital – school – supermarket) when we are sick.
- 4 We can buy clothes and shoes from the (office – hospital – shopping mall).
- 5 Elephants have long (trunks – necks – fur).

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

5

- 1 live – I – a – in – house.
.....
- 2 park – play – the – I – in – football.
.....
- 3 you – helping – Do – people – like?
.....
- 4 love – They – games – video – playing.
.....
- 5 next – My home – is – the – to – school.
.....



Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

4.5

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 We went to the (park – zoo – club) on a school trip.
- 2 Elephants used their (trunks – ears – tails) to spray water.
- 3 Giraffes were (eating – picking – playing) leaves from tall tree branches.



Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words:

8

do – Bazaar – amazing – gifts

Mayar : I went to Khan Al-Khalili (1)

Eman : What did you (2) there?

Mayar : I bought lots of (3) for my friends.

Eman : That's (4) ! I will go there soon, too.



Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

7.5

Firefighters are very brave. They save people's lives from dangerous fires. They use many tools like ladders and water hoses. I want to be a firefighter when I grow up.

A Answer the following questions:

- 1 Why are firefighters brave?
- 2 What do firefighters use?

B Choose the correct answer:

- 3 Firefighters are (smart – dangerous – brave).
- 4 Firefighters use (fires – ladders – games).
- 5 Firefighters save people's lives from (dangerous – small – safe) fires.



Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer:

5

- 1 The cat is (on – next – in front) the chair.
- 2 (Do – Does – Is) she play tennis?
- 3 We need to (protect – endanger – clean) animals from disappearing.
- 4 Carpenters use (nails – wood – fire) to put the table together.
- 5 Siwa Oasis is famous for its (palm trees – museums – parks).

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

5

- 1 dogs – Cats – nicer – are – than.
.....
- 2 big – have – Elephants – ears.
.....
- 3 clean – live – I – a – community – in.
.....
- 4 swimming – go – I – every week.
.....
- 5 volunteers – Reem – to – park – collect – trash – in – the.
.....



Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

4.5

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 My uncle is a/an (doctor – teacher – engineer) in a big company.
- 2 My uncle (designs – draws – builds) buildings and roads.
- 3 Engineers make life (harder – easier – dangerous).



Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words:

8

do – trash – clean – volunteer

Mariam: Would you like to (1) at our community park?

Sarah : What will we (2) ?

Mariam: We need to collect (3) and put them in bins.

Sarah : Great! This will make our park (4)



Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

7.5

We have five amazing senses that we use daily. We use our eyes to see and our noses to smell. I like looking at roses and smelling them. We use our hands to touch and feel things. We use our tongues to taste.

A Answer the following questions:

- 1 How many senses do we have?
- 2 What do we use our hands for?

B Choose the correct answer:

- 1 We use our (eyes – nose – hands) to see things.
- 2 We use our (tongues – eyes – ears) to taste.
- 3 We use our (hands – noses – eyes) to smell roses.



Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer:

5

- 1 I think cats are (fast – faster – fastest) than dogs.
- 2 A (habitat – hospital – house) is a place where animals live and grow.
- 3 The post office is (in front of – above – between) the hospital and the bank.
- 4 We bought (gifts – food – drinks) from the bazaar.
- 5 Foxes have red-brown (uniform – fur – footprint).

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

5

- 1 uncle – My – a – is – firefighter.
.....
- 2 Nile River – is – The – the longest – river.
.....
- 3 The park – next – to – restaurant – the – is.
.....
- 4 went – the – zoo – Reem – to see – to – animals.
.....
- 5 have – longer – than – necks – Giraffes – elephants.
.....



Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

4.5

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Saint Catherine is a (mountain – park – hospital) in Sinai.
- 2 We saw many (small – beautiful – large) colored rocks.
- 3 We visited the Saint Catherine's (club – school – monastery).



Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words:

8

tails – cats – pet – look

Adel : Do you have a (1)

Omar : Yes, I have two (2)

Adel : What do they (3) like?

Omar : They are both small, and have orange (4)



Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

7.5

My family and I went to the Pyramids. They are very big and ancient. We also rode a camel there and saw many tourists. I had so much fun, and I bought a gift to my friend who lives in Canada.

A Answering questions:

- 1 How did his family go?
- 2 What?

B Answer:

- 1 (small – short – ancient) and old.
2 (giraffe – cat – camel).
3 saw many (tourists – animals – buildings).



Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer:

5

- 1 The (teacher – vet – nurse) helps the doctor in the hospital.
- 2 The cat is (between – on – in) the chair and the desk.
- 3 I don't (liked – likes – like) eating sweets.
- 4 The (zebra – cat – lion) has a striped coat.
- 5 The firefighter is (brave – shy – sad). He saved everyone from the fire.

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

5

- 1 clean – the – We – should – streets.
.....

- 2 protect – need – People – animals – to.
.....

- 3 subject – is – English – easiest – the.
.....

- 4 you – Do – like – chicken?
.....

- 5 cats – bigger – are – than – Giraffes.
.....



Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

4.5

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Reham has a (turtle – cat – rabbit) named Billy.
- 2 Reham feeds Billy (vegetables – fruit – fish).
- 3 Animals should get (daily – weekly – monthly) care.



Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words:

8

safe – pollution – animals – protect

Amir : What can we do to (1)..... animals?

Amina : We need to create (2)..... spaces for them.

Amir : I think we should also stop (3).....

Amina : This will keep them (4).....



Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

7.5

Karim has a special voice. He likes to do voice-overs for cartoons and TV shows. He can make his voice very low or very high. Everyone says he should he become a voice-over actor in the future.

A Answer

1 How

2 W

B

4.5 (الإجابة)

ج (giro' saw man

ing question

rd his

30

(s'

ج (giro'

music).

(الإجابة: راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

4.5 (الإجابة)

5

4 Choose

1 T

2

8

ج mountain in the world.

on – behind) a big wall.

She helps students become (shy – brave – sad).

ج from the (bazaar – restaurant – park) when she was at Khan

all.

ج Wild animals (face – play – protect) challenges to survive.

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

5

1 long – necks – Giraffes – have.

2 doesn't – She – speak – French.

3 care – daily – get – Animals – should.

4 moved – clean – We – to – community – a.

5 Cairo Tower – is – The – old – an – building.

Tapescripts

يحتوي هذا الجزء على إجابات نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بالكتاب.

UNIT 1

Practice on Lesson 1

We have a lesson today about the five senses. Our five senses work together to help us understand and enjoy the world. When we eat, we use our tongue to taste the delicious food. We can hear the birds singing using our sense of hearing. Our senses also help us stay safe, like when we smell smoke, we know there's a fire.

TEST YOURSELF 1

We have five senses. We see with our eyes and hear with our ears. We taste food with our tongues. We touch things with our hands. We smell flowers with our noses. Our senses help us learn and stay safe every day.

TEST YOURSELF 2

Sarah is a healthy girl. She wakes up early and brushes her teeth. She eats eggs and drinks juice for breakfast. At school, she drinks water and plays with her friends. In the evening, she helps her mother and sleeps early to stay strong.

Al Azhar Corner

My name is Dalia. Let me tell you about my healthy habits. I wake up early at 6:00 a.m.

I get dressed to school, then I have a healthy breakfast. I eat healthy food and drink plenty of water. I don't drink cola. I play sports and enjoy my day.

UNIT 2

Practice on Lesson 1

Adam is talking with his friend Amira about helping their community. He says he cleans trash on Saturday with his friends. He also feeds animals on Wednesday. His sister helps her neighbors and she volunteers, too. Amira also helps the community. She collects clothes for those in need.

TEST YOURSELF 1

Egypt has two special regions: The Delta in the north and Upper Egypt in the south. Each region has its traditions and culture. In the Delta region, they celebrate the Spring Festival with colorful decorations and special foods. Farmers grow rice and cotton. Many people work in factories and make beautiful crafts. Women are known for making clothes.

TEST YOURSELF 2

Adam helps his community every Saturday. He collects trash from the streets with his friends. This makes the streets look clean and nice. He also plants trees in the park. Trees give shade and fresh air. Adam feels happy when he helps.

Al-Azhar Corner

Let's end air pollution. Walk or cycle to school. Plant trees in the park. Keep your community clean.

UNIT 3

Practice on Lesson 1

I watch a TV program about animals. I know a lot about animals. The elephant drinks lots of water. The monkey climbs trees. The zebra runs in groups. The bear catches fish. The giraffe has a long neck. The lion is the king of the jungle land.

TEST YOURSELF 1

An old lion was too weak to hunt. He tricked animals and pretended to be sick. He called the animals to his cave. But they never returned. A wise fox saw the footprints going in, but none coming out. He ran away safely.

TEST YOURSELF 2

A boy saw a frown on his sister's face. To make her happy, he gave her fruit and played the drum. Then they went to plant flowers. Later, they sat by a plant and began to draw pictures of their fun day.

AL-AZHAR CORNER

There are many different animals in the world. The elephant has a heavy trunk. The monkey has a long tail. The bear has thick fur. The zebra has a striped coat.

UNIT 4

Practice on Lesson 1

There are many amazing places to visit in Egypt. The Pyramids are one of them. Tourists like to take many pictures and enjoy riding camels near the Pyramids. They can also visit the Grand Egyptian Museum, which has many treasures and history.

A Answer

1 How

2 W

B

4.5

(الإجابة)

(girl)

saw man

(الإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

4.5

4 Choose

1 T

2

8

... wants to be
... roussef is an engineer.
... met. Salma is a nurse. She helps
... is a firefighter. He stops fires and saves

TEST YOURSELF 1

Sami was a skilled carpenter. He built strong houses and nice furniture. One day, the king asked him to build a final house. Sami used weak wood and didn't work well. When he finished, the king said, "This house is for you." Sami felt sad and sorry.

TEST YOURSELF 2

My neighbor Omar is a firefighter. He wears a thick uniform and a heavy helmet. Every day, he checks his equipment and the red fire truck. When the alarm rings, he rides with his team to help people. He is proud to save lives.

AL-AZHAR CORNER

Hello! My name is Khaled. I'm a firefighter. Every day, I wear my special red uniform and helmet. I drive a big red fire truck around the city. I use a ladder and a water hose to put out fires. My job is dangerous, but I'm proud to do it.

ing question

nd his

30

Test 1

... are my tips to have healthy habits. ... day at 6 am. I brush my teeth, then ... to school to have energy. I always ... drink lots of water. At 8:30 pm, I ... before I go to sleep. This helps my ... day.

Test 2

... er to keep our community ... in many places, so people ... We can also plant more ... volunteer to collect clothes ... need.

... as they are amazing and ... them daily. She owns a small cat ... one feeds her every day and plays with ... me has thick white hair and a long fluffy tail with ... ight blue eyes.

Test 4

Maya, a kind mentor, works in a special club. She taught young, shy children fun games that made them brave. Slowly, they learned to speak up, share ideas, and try new things. Soon, they didn't feel afraid to talk or try new things.

Test 5

My friend Sarah went to Siwa Oasis last month. She swam in the Salt Lake there. She also told me about the old palm trees there and that I need to try their dates. She was so happy when she went to the desert, and how beautiful it was. Sarah said that it was an amazing experience.

Test 6

A new library opened in our community! It is big with lots of spaces. There are many books about different things. There are quiet places to sit and read your favorite book. You can also buy books if you want. You can also borrow books for a week and return them before borrowing new ones.

Test 7

We had a nice day at the forest park. The forest officer checked our tickets. Then a forest guide helped us inside the forest park. He told us about all the animals there. We watched a family of elephants moving between the trees. Then, we saw zebras with their striped coats, running in groups.

Test 8

The Arabian leopard lives in the mountains and deserts. It has beautiful spots and is hard to see. There are only a few left, so it's in great danger. People are working hard to protect these special animals and help them survive.

Test 9

A fire alarm rang loudly. A firefighter quickly put on his oxygen tank. He used a ladder from his big fire truck to reach the flames. He saved people from the fire. The firefighter was very brave.

Test 10

Gigi is a tall giraffe. It lives in Africa. It has a long neck and long legs. It eats leaves from high trees. It has big spots all over its body. It's a cute and beautiful animal.

Test 11

Every morning, Noha walks to the park. She carries a bag full of food for cats and dogs. She feeds the cats and dogs and plays with them. Animals feel happy when they see her every day. She takes them to the vet when they're injured or sick.

Test 12

Last week, Somaya received a big package. It didn't have a name on it. She went to the post office to know who sent it. They told her it was from China. Somaya took the package and left. Later, her aunt called her and said that she sent her the package. The package was a gift for her birthday.

Test 13

Omar has a very nice voice. He works as a voice-over actor. He can speak very fast or very slow. He makes little voices for small characters and loud voices for large ones. He can do voice-overs for cartoons and tell fun stories.

Test 14

Egyptian traditions are old and special. People love spending time with family and respecting older people. They enjoy eating meals together and sharing food. Traditional music is full of joy. Egyptians also wear traditional clothes. Men wear galabeyas in Upper Egypt.

Test 15

Sarah moved to a new school last year because she didn't know anyone. Ms. Reem the Arabian teacher, helped her a lot. Ms. Reem is kind and smiles. She helped her be brave and speak. Now, Sarah is popular and has many friends in new cities.

Azhar Tests

Test 1

Hend lives in a clean community. There is a park where people can walk. There is a library to borrow books there. Next to the library, there is a hospital where doctors help sick people.

Test 2

Last Friday, we went on a school trip to the zoo. We saw many animals there. Elephants were moving around. They used their trunks to spray water. Giraffes were eating leaves from tall tree branches.

Test 3

My uncle works as an engineer in a big company. He designs new buildings and roads. Engineers make life easier. That's why I want to be an engineer when I grow up.

Test 4

I went to Saint Catherine last month with my family. It is a beautiful mountain in South Sinai. We saw many beautiful colored rocks while climbing the mountain. We also visited the Saint Catherine's monastery.

Test 5

Reham loves animals so much. She has a turtle named Billy. She feeds Billy vegetables and takes him to the vet two times a month. Reham says that animals should get daily care.

Writing Answers

يحتوي هذا الجزء على إجابات أسئلة الكتابة (براجراف) الخاصة بجميع الوحدات.

UNIT 1 Lesson 1

Our senses

Our senses are amazing. We hear music with our sense of **hearing**. We smell flowers with our nose. **Smelling** makes us feel safe. Our senses help us **understand** the world around us.

UNIT 1 Lessons 4 and 5

My healthy daily routine

I have a fantastic healthy routine every day. **First**, I wake up early and smile. **Next**, I brush my teeth and eat breakfast. Then, I go to school happily. **Finally**, I sleep early to stay strong.

TEST YOURSELF 1

My healthy day

I follow a good **daily routine**. I eat **healthy food** like eggs and fruit. I drink water every day. I play sports with my friends. These things help me **stay strong**.

TEST YOURSELF 2

Having a daily routine

Having a daily routine is **important**. This routine should be **healthy**. I eat healthy food every morning. I drink much water every day. I do exercise to stay **strong**. Good habits help me feel happy.

UNIT 2 Lesson 2

"Traffic problem near schools"

Our community has many problems. Cars don't **move** quickly in the morning, especially near **schools**. To solve this problem, I think we don't need to use cars every day. We can take the school **bus** instead.

UNIT 2 Lessons 4 and 5

"Our village in the past"

Many years **ago**, our village was very **different**. There were small **stalls** in the streets selling food and clothes. Life was simple, and people were kind to each other.

TEST YOURSELF 1

"We help our community"

We can help our community. I **plant trees** in the park. I **clean trash** from the streets with my friends every Saturday. I **feed animals**.

TEST YOURSELF 2

"My village in the past"

Today, I looked at **old photos** of my village. There were no **tall buildings**, just simple houses. My village has a **rich history** that makes me feel proud.

UNIT 3 Lesson 2

Pets

Pets need **daily care** and love. **Dogs** are friendly and like to play. **Rabbits** are soft and cute. I give them food and water. I love my pets so much!

UNIT 3 Lessons 4 and 5

Endangered animals

Many animals are **in danger of** disappearing forever. These animals are called **endangered species**, like the Arabian Leopard and the Red Sea Dugong. We must protect their homes to **help these animals**.

TEST YOURSELF 1

Helping animals

Wild animals face different **challenges** in the forest. Their homes are getting smaller because of people and cities. **Forest officers** work hard to keep wild animals safe.

TEST YOURSELF 2

A Day at the forest park

I sometimes visit the forest park. The **forest guide** shows **visitors** many animals. Visitors see elephants drinking water and monkeys climbing trees. Lions live in the forest and they **hunt at night**.

UNIT 4 Lesson 1

"The Pyramids of Giza"

The Pyramids are very nice. Many **tourists** come to visit the Pyramids. **They** take many **pictures** near the Pyramids. They can **ride** camels, too. It's fun!

UNIT 4 Lesson 2

"Places in my town"

There are many places in my town. The **school** is near my house. I walk to school every morning. There is a **museum** behind the library. There's a store next to my house. My dad works in the **hospital**.

UNIT 4 Lessons 4 and 5

"St. Catherine Mountain is an amazing place"

Many **tourists** visit St. Catherine Mountain in South Sinai, Egypt. They wake up early to climb, and wear **warm clothes** because it's cold. St. Catherine is a popular place for **nature**, adventure, and fun with friends and family.

TEST YOURSELF 1

"My city"

My city is **Cairo**. It is **big and busy**. I love walking by the **Nile** and visiting the **Grand Egyptian Museum** with my family.

TEST YOURSELF 2

"Your visit to Siwa Oasis"

I visited Siwa Oasis last summer. I saw the **salt lake** and beautiful **palm trees**. The **desert** was quiet and hot, but I loved it!

UNIT 5 Lesson 1

"Different Jobs"

All jobs are really important. A doctor helps **patients** and checks their health. An engineer designs new **buildings**. A firefighter stops **fires** and saves people.

UNIT 5 Lesson 2

"Amazing jobs"

Many jobs are amazing. The mentor helps **young students** learn and grow. Mona works with puppets. She uses **puppets** to tell stories and do many **shows** for children.

UNIT 5 Lessons 4 and 5

"Firefighters"

Firefighters work at a **fire station**. They work very hard every day. They are brave and strong. They wear a uniform with a **helmet** to stay safe. They help people and **save** lives.

TEST YOURSELF 1

"Police officers"

Police officers wear a white **uniform** at work. Their job is **important**. They **protect** people. They are brave and strong.

TEST YOURSELF 2

"A job you want to do"

I want to be a nurse. A **nurse** wears a **blue uniform**. She works at a **hospital**. She helps the doctors and cares for the patients.

كراسة تسميع الكلمات

Dictation Copybook



Unit 1

DICTATION



Lesson 1

يتذوق

يرى

يشم

يسمع

يلمس

الحواس

لذيذ

دخان

صوت

رائع

ملون

فراشات

Lesson 2

صحي

مبكراً

عادات

بعد ذلك

طاقة

عقل

طازج

حلو

فيتامينات

خضراوات

Lesson 3

سوق

مطعم

عملات معدنية

جائع

مالك

صوت زنين

طعام

طماغ

يشارك

جيب

Lessons 4 & 5

أولاً

بعد ذلك

ثم

في النهاية

يرتدى

بعد المدرسة

الروتين اليومي

وجبة خفيفة

هام

نفس الشيء

Unit₂

DICTATION



Lesson 1

يتطوع	يجمع
شوارع	يزرع
زجاجات	ينظف
قمامة	يساعد
ملابس	يطعم
حديقة مجتمعية	يقوم بعمل رائع

Lesson 2

طويل	مجتمع
بسرعة	الأرض
طريق	مشكلة
حمام (دش)	صناديق قمامة
مرور	حل

Lesson 3

أحداث	الدلتا
ثقافة	الجنوب
خاص	الشمال
مزارعون	ملابس عصرية
مصانع	صعيد مصر
فخار	تقاليد

Lessons 4 & 5

مدهش	مذكرة
طازج	محطة القطار
خشبي	تاريخ
مبنى	صور
أكشاك	الحي
بأمان	غنى / ملء بـ

Unit 3

DICTATION



Lesson 1

.....	أسد	.....	ذيل
.....	قرد	.....	خرطوم
.....	فيل	.....	معطف (فرو الحيوانات)
.....	زرافة	.....	فرو
.....	حمار وحشي	.....	مخالب
.....	دب	.....	أوراق الشجر

Lesson 2

.....	أطباء بيطريون	.....	عناية
.....	حيوانات حديقة الحيوان	.....	تحديات / صعوبات
.....	حراس الغابة	.....	أقفاص
.....	الحياة البرية	.....	حيوانات أليفة
.....	اهتمام / رعاية	.....	حداائق الحيوان
.....	الملاك (أصحاب الشيء)	.....	طيور

Lesson 3

.....	يصطاد	.....	حكيم
.....	يدعى / يتظاهر	.....	أخطاء
.....	ثعلب	.....	ذات مرة
.....	خدعة	.....	حفرة
.....	يستلقي	.....	سطح
.....	كهف	.....	زائر

Lessons 4 & 5

.....	تقرير بحثي	.....	للأبد
.....	النمر العربي	.....	سبب
.....	مُهدد بالانقراض	.....	التلوث
.....	موطن / بيئة	.....	مناطق آمنة
.....	فصائل / أنواع	.....	حقائق
.....	أطوم	.....	لطيف



Lesson 1

الأهرامات	أماكن
نهر النيل	يتحدث عن
برج القاهرة	مرشد سياحي
واحة سيوة	السياح
المتحف المصري	رائع
بازار خان الخليلي	قريب
تاريخ	هدايا

Lesson 2

مكتبة	مدينة
مدرسة	معلمون
مول تجاري	ممرضون
مكتب بريد	طلاب
مستشفى	أطباء
متحف	مرضى

Lesson 3

كمثرى	دبوس
بركة	منقار
قمة	يطبطب
خفاش	علاقة قوية
حظر / منع	طاسة

Lessons 4 & 5

جبل سانت كاترين	صخور ملونة
نباتات	الطبيعة
مغامرة	منشور
دير قديم	طعام محلي
جنوب سيناء	نخل
سعر	زيت زيتون

Unit 5

DICTATION



Lesson 1

.....	طبيب	.....	خوذة
.....	ممرضة	.....	زى موحد
.....	مدرسة	.....	حرائق
.....	مهندس	.....	مريض
.....	رجل إطفاء	.....	أزياء
.....	ضابط شرطة	.....	وظيفة

Lesson 2

.....	مُوجّه	.....	أصوات (بشرية)
.....	مصور الحياة البرية	.....	إبتسامات
.....	مؤدّ صوتي	.....	ضحكات
.....	درجات	.....	كرتون / رسوم متحركة
.....	صور	.....	عروض
.....	صور فوتوغرافية	.....	شخصيات

Lesson 3

.....	نجار	.....	طلب
.....	مفاتيح	.....	صدمة / ذهول
.....	أثاث	.....	إهمال
.....	ماهر / بارع	.....	خشبي
.....	هدية	.....	حريص
.....	مسمار	.....	نهائي

Lessons 4 & 5

.....	محطة إطفاء	.....	أدوات
.....	سيارة إطفاء	.....	أسطوانات أكسجين
.....	خطر	.....	معدات
.....	سلام	.....	جرس إنذار
.....	زى واقٍ	.....	خراطيم مياه
.....	المكان الصحيح	.....	إنقاذ الأرواح